



Cloud Volumes ONTAP documentation

Cloud Volumes ONTAP

NetApp
September 04, 2025

This PDF was generated from <https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/blexp-cloud-volumes-ontap/aws/index.html> on September 04, 2025. Always check docs.netapp.com for the latest.

Table of Contents

Cloud Volumes ONTAP documentation	1
Release notes	2
What's new in Cloud Volumes ONTAP	2
4 September 2025	2
11 August 2025	2
14 July 2025	2
25 June 2025	3
29 May 2025	3
12 May 2025	3
16 April 2025	3
14 April 2025	4
3 April 2025	4
28 March 2025	4
12 March 2025	4
10 March 2025	5
6 March 2025	5
03 March 2025	5
18 February 2025	5
10 February 2025	5
9 December 2024	6
11 November 2024	6
25 October 2024	7
7 October 2024	8
9 September 2024	8
23 August 2024	8
22 August 2024	9
8 August 2024	9
10 June 2024	9
17 May 2024	9
23 April 2024	10
8 March 2024	10
5 March 2024	10
2 February 2024	11
16 January 2024	11
8 January 2024	11
6 December 2023	11
5 December 2023	12
10 November 2023	12
8 November 2023	12
1 November 2023	13
23 October 2023	13
6 October 2023	13
10 September 2023	14

30 July 2023	14
26 July 2023	14
2 July 2023	15
26 June 2023	15
4 June 2023	15
7 May 2023	15
4 April 2023	16
3 April 2023	16
13 March 2023	18
5 March 2023	18
5 February 2023	19
1 January 2023	20
15 December 2022	20
8 December 2022	20
4 December 2022	20
15 November 2022	21
6 November 2022	21
18 September 2022	21
31 July 2022	22
18 July 2022	23
3 July 2022	24
7 June 2022	25
2 May 2022	26
3 April 2022	28
27 February 2022	28
9 February 2022	29
6 February 2022	29
30 January 2022	29
2 January 2022	30
28 November 2021	31
4 October 2021	32
2 September 2021	32
7 July 2021	33
30 May 2021	35
24 May 2021	36
11 Apr 2021	36
8 Mar 2021	36
4 Jan 2021	37
3 Nov 2020	39
Known limitations	39
BlueXP doesn't support FlexGroup volumes creation	39
BlueXP doesn't support S3 with Cloud Volumes ONTAP	39
BlueXP doesn't support disaster recovery for storage VMs	39
Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes	40
Get started	41

Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP	41
Supported ONTAP versions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployments	42
AWS	42
Get started in Amazon Web Services	43
Quick start for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS	43
Plan your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration in AWS	44
Set up your networking	48
Set up Cloud Volumes ONTAP to use a customer-managed key in AWS	71
Set up AWS IAM roles for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes	74
Set up licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS	83
Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS	90
Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS Secret Cloud or AWS Top Secret Cloud	103
Use Cloud Volumes ONTAP	121
License management	121
Manage capacity-based licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	121
Manage Keystone subscriptions through BlueXP	126
Manage node-based licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	129
Volume and LUN administration	134
Create a FlexVol volume on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system	134
Manage volumes on Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems	140
Tier inactive Cloud Volumes ONTAP data to a low-cost object storage	149
Connect to a LUN on Cloud Volumes ONTAP from your host system	155
Accelerate data access with FlexCache volumes on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system	156
Aggregate administration	158
Create an aggregate for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems	158
Manage aggregates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP clusters	159
Manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate capacity on a Connector	161
Storage VM administration	163
Manage storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	163
Manage data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS	164
Set up storage VM disaster recovery for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	171
Security and data encryption	172
Encrypt volumes on Cloud Volumes ONTAP with NetApp encryption solutions	172
Manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP encryption keys with AWS Key Management Service	172
Enable NetApp ransomware protection solutions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	173
Create tamperproof Snapshot copies of WORM files on Cloud Volumes ONTAP	177
System administration	178
Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP software	178
Register Cloud Volumes ONTAP pay-as-you-go systems	187
Convert a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node-based license to a capacity-based license	187
Start and stop a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system	190
Synchronize Cloud Volumes ONTAP system time using the NTP server	193
Modify system write speed	193
Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin password	194
Add, remove, or delete systems	195

AWS administration	199
Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP using System Manager	201
Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the CLI	203
System health and events	204
Verify AutoSupport setup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	204
Configure EMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems	208
Concepts	209
Licensing	209
Licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	209
Learn more about capacity-based licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	213
Storage	217
Supported client protocols for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	217
Disks and aggregates used for Cloud Volumes ONTAP clusters	217
Learn about support for AWS Elastic Volumes with Cloud Volumes ONTAP	219
Learn about data tiering with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, Azure, or Google Cloud	225
Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage management	228
Write speed	230
Flash Cache	233
Learn about WORM storage on Cloud Volumes ONTAP	233
High-availability pairs	235
Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in AWS	235
Operations unavailable when a node in Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair is offline	242
Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP data encryption and ransomware protection	242
Encryption of data at rest	243
ONTAP virus scanning	244
Ransomware protection	244
Learn about performance monitoring for Cloud Volumes ONTAP workloads	244
Performance technical reports	245
CPU performance	245
License management for node-based BYOL	245
BYOL system licenses	245
License management for a new system	245
License expiration	246
License renewal	247
License transfer to a new system	247
Learn how AutoSupport and Digital Advisor are used for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	248
Supported default configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP	249
Default setup	249
Internal disks for system data	250
Knowledge and support	252
Register for support	252
Support registration overview	252
Register BlueXP for NetApp support	252
Associate NSS credentials for Cloud Volumes ONTAP support	254
Get help	256

Get support for a cloud provider file service	256
Use self-support options	256
Create a case with NetApp support	256
Manage your support cases (Preview)	259
Legal notices	262
Copyright	262
Trademarks	262
Patents	262
Privacy policy	262
Open source	262

Cloud Volumes ONTAP documentation

Release notes

What's new in Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Learn what's new with Cloud Volumes ONTAP management in BlueXP.

The enhancements described on this page are specific to BlueXP features that enable management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. To learn what's new with the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software itself, [go to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#).

4 September 2025

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.17.1 RC

You can now use BlueXP to deploy and manage the Release Candidate 1 of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.17.1 in Azure and Google Cloud. However, this version is not available for deployment and upgrade in AWS.

[Learn more about this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

11 August 2025

End of availability of Optimized licenses

Beginning on August 11, 2025, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Optimized license will be deprecated and will no longer be available for purchase or renewal in the Azure and Google Cloud marketplaces for pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscriptions. If you have an existing annual contract with an Optimized license, you can continue to use the license until the end of your contract. When your Optimized license expires, you can opt for Cloud Volumes ONTAP Essentials or Professional licenses in BlueXP.

However, the ability to add or renew Optimized licenses will be available through the APIs.

For information about licensing packages, refer to [Licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

For information about switching to a different charging method, refer to [Manage capacity-based licensing](#).

14 July 2025

Support for transparent proxy

BlueXP now supports transparent proxy servers in addition to the existing explicit proxy connections. When creating or modifying the BlueXP Connector, you can configure a transparent proxy server to securely manage network traffic to and from Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For more information about the use of proxy servers in Cloud Volumes ONTAP, refer to:

- [Network configurations to support Connector proxy in AWS](#)
- [Network configurations to support Connector proxy in Azure](#)
- [Network configurations to support Connector proxy in Google Cloud](#)

New VM type supported for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Beginning with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1, L8s_v3 is supported as a VM type in Azure single and multiple availability zones, for both new and existing high-availability (HA) pair deployments.

For more information, refer to [Supported configurations in Azure](#).

25 June 2025

Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Beginning June 25, 2025, NetApp has restricted the bring your own license (BYOL) licensing model for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. The restriction applies to all customers and Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployments in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud. The only exemptions are the U.S. Public Sector customers and China region deployments.

NetApp support and services will continue until your BYOL contract expires, but your expired licenses will not be renewed or extended. When your BYOL licenses expire, you must replace them with capacity-based licenses purchased through your cloud marketplace subscriptions. A capacity-based licensing model through hyperscaler marketplaces streamlines the licensing experience and delivers greater business benefits. Contact your NetApp accounts team or customer success representatives to discuss your options of conversion.

For more information, refer to this customer communiqué: [CPC-00661: Changes to Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL Policy](#).

29 May 2025

Private mode deployments enabled for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.1

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.1 in private mode in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud. Private mode is enabled for both single-node and high-availability (HA) deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.1.

For more information about private mode deployments refer to [Learn about BlueXP deployment modes](#).

12 May 2025

Discovery of deployments made through the Azure marketplace in BlueXP

BlueXP now has the capability of discovering the Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems deployed directly through the Azure marketplace. This means that you can now add and manage these systems as working environments in BlueXP, just like any other Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the Azure marketplace](#)

16 April 2025

New regions supported in Azure

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later in single and multiple availability zones in Azure in the following regions. This includes support for both single-node and high-availability (HA) deployments.

- Spain Central
- Mexico Central

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

14 April 2025

Storage VM creation automated through the APIs in Google Cloud

You can now use the BlueXP APIs to automate the storage VM creation in Google Cloud. You have been using this feature in Cloud Volumes ONTAP high-availability (HA) configurations, and now you can also use it in single node deployments. By using the BlueXP APIs, you can easily create, rename, and delete additional data-serving storage VMs in your Google Cloud environment, without the need to manually configure the required network interfaces, LIFs, and management LIFs. This automation simplifies the process of managing storage VMs.

[Manage data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud](#)

3 April 2025

Support for China regions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 in AWS

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 in AWS in China regions. This includes support for both single-node and high-availability (HA) deployments. After you have deployed Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1, you can upgrade it to later versions. Only licenses purchased directly from NetApp are supported.

For regional availability, refer to the [Global Regions Maps for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

28 March 2025

Private mode deployments enabled for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1 in private mode in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud. Private mode is enabled for both single-node and high-availability (HA) deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1.

For more information about private mode deployments refer to [Learn about BlueXP deployment modes](#).

12 March 2025

New regions supported for multiple availability zone deployments in Azure

The following regions now support HA multiple availability zone deployments in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later:

- Central US
- US Gov Virginia (US Government Region - Virginia)

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

10 March 2025

Storage VM creation automated through the APIs in Azure

You can now use the BlueXP APIs to create, rename, and delete additional data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure. Using the APIs automates the process of storage VM creation, including the configuration of the required network interfaces, LIFs, and a management LIF, if you need to use a storage VM for management purposes.

[Manage data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)

6 March 2025

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.16.1 GA

You can now use BlueXP to deploy and manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.16.1 General Availability release in Azure and Google Cloud. However, this version is not available for deployment and upgrade in AWS.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

03 March 2025

Support for New Zealand North region in Azure

The New Zealand North region is now supported in Azure for single node and high-availability (HA) configurations of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later. Note that the Lsv3 instance type is not supported in this region.

For a list of all supported regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

18 February 2025

Introducing Azure marketplace direct deployment

You can now take advantage of Azure marketplace direct deployment to easily and quickly deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP directly from the Azure marketplace. Using this streamlined method, you can explore the core features and capabilities of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in your environment without the need to set up the BlueXP Connector or meet other onboarding criteria required for deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP through BlueXP.

- [Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployment options in Azure](#)
- [Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the Azure marketplace](#)

10 February 2025

User authentication enabled for accessing System Manager from BlueXP

As a BlueXP administrator, you can now activate authentication for ONTAP users accessing ONTAP System Manager from BlueXP. You can enable this option by editing the BlueXP Connector settings. This option is available for standard and private modes.

[Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP using System Manager.](#)

BlueXP Advanced View renamed to System Manager

The option for advanced management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP from BlueXP through ONTAP System Manager has been renamed from **Advanced View** to **System Manager**.

[Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP using System Manager.](#)

Introducing a simpler way to manage licenses with the BlueXP digital wallet

Now, you can experience simplified management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP licenses by using improved navigation points within the BlueXP digital wallet:

- Access your Cloud Volumes ONTAP license information easily through the **Governance > Digital wallet > Overview/Direct Licenses** tabs.
- Click **View** on the Cloud Volume ONTAP panel in the **Overview** tab to gain a comprehensive understanding of your capacity-based licenses. This advanced view offers detailed insight into your licenses and subscriptions.
- If you prefer the previous interface, you can click the **Switch to legacy view** button to view license details by type and modify charging methods for your licenses.

[Manage capacity-based licenses.](#)

9 December 2024

List of supported VMs updated for Azure to align with the best practices

The DS_v2 and Es_v3 machine families are no longer available for selection on BlueXP when deploying new instances of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure. These families will be retained and supported only in older, existing systems. New deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP are supported in Azure only from the 9.12.1 release. We recommend that you switch to either Es_v4 or any other series compatible with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 and later. The DS_v2 and Es_v3 series machines, however, will be available for new deployments made through the API.

[Supported configurations in Azure](#)

11 November 2024

End of availability for node-based licenses

NetApp has planned the end of availability (EOA) and end of support (EOS) of Cloud Volumes ONTAP node-based licensing. Beginning with 11 November, 2024, the limited availability of node-based licenses has been terminated. The support for node-based licensing ends on 31 December, 2024. After the EOA of your node-based licenses, you should transition to capacity-based licensing by using the BlueXP license conversion tool.

For annual or longer-term commitments, NetApp recommends that you contact your NetApp representative prior to the EOA date or license expiration date to ensure that the prerequisites for the transition are in place. If you don't have a long-term contract for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node and run your system against an on-demand pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription, it is important to plan your conversion before the EOS date. For both long-term contracts and PAYGO subscriptions, you can use the BlueXP license conversion tool for a seamless conversion.

[End of availability of node-based licenses](#)

[Convert a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node-based license to a capacity-based license](#)

Removal of node-based deployments from BlueXP

The option to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems by using node-based licenses is deprecated on BlueXP. Except for a few special cases, you cannot use node-based licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployments for any cloud provider.

NetApp recognizes the following unique licensing requirements in compliance with contractual obligations and operational needs, and will continue to support node-based licenses in these situations:

- U.S. Public Sector customers
- Deployments in private mode
- China region deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS
- If you have a valid, non-expired by-node bring your own license (BYOL license)

[End of availability of node-based licenses](#)

Addition of a cold tier for Cloud Volumes ONTAP data on Azure Blob storage

BlueXP now enables you to select a cold tier to store the inactive capacity tier data on Azure Blob storage. Adding the cold tier to the existing hot and cool tiers provides you with a more affordable storage option and improved cost efficiency.

[Data tiering in Azure](#)

Option to restrict public access to storage account for Azure

You now have the option to restrict public access to your storage account for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in Azure. By disabling access, you can secure your private IP address from exposure even within the same VNet, should there be a need to comply with your organization's security policies. This option also disables data tiering for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, and is applicable to both single node and high-availability pairs.

[Security group rules.](#)

WORM enablement after deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You now have the ability to activate write once, read many (WORM) storage on an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP system using BlueXP. This functionality provides you with the flexibility of enabling WORM on a working environment, even if WORM was not enabled on it during its creation. Once enabled, you cannot disable WORM.

[Enabling WORM on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment](#)

25 October 2024

List of supported VMs updated for Google Cloud to align with the best practices

The n1 series machines are no longer available for selection on BlueXP when deploying new instances of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud. The n1 series machines will be retained and supported only in older, existing systems. New deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP are supported in Google Cloud only from the 9.8 release. We recommend that you switch to the n2 series machine types that are compatible with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 and later. The n1 series machines, however, will be available for new deployments performed through the API.

[Supported configurations in Google Cloud.](#)

Local Zones support for Amazon Web Services in private mode

BlueXP now supports AWS Local Zones for Cloud Volumes ONTAP high availability (HA) deployments in private mode. The support that was earlier limited to only standard mode has now been extended to include private mode.



AWS Local Zones are not supported when using BlueXP in restricted mode.

For more information on AWS Local Zones with HA Deployments, refer to [AWS Local Zones](#).

7 October 2024

Enhanced user experience in version selection for upgrade

Beginning with this release, when you try to upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP using the BlueXP notification, you will receive guidance on the default, latest, and compatible versions to use. Also, now you can select the latest patch or major version compatible with your Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance, or manually enter a version for upgrade.

[Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP software](#)

9 September 2024

WORM and ARP functionalities are no longer chargeable

The built-in data protection and security features of WORM (Write Once Read Many) and ARP (Autonomous Ransomware Protection) will be offered with Cloud Volumes ONTAP licenses at no extra cost. The new pricing model applies to both new and existing BYOL and PAYGO/marketplace subscriptions of AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud. Both capacity-based and node-based licenses will contain ARP and WORM for all configurations, including single node and high-availability (HA) pairs, at no additional cost.

The simplified pricing brings you these benefits:

- Accounts that currently include WORM and ARP will no longer incur charges for these features. Going forward, your billing will only have charges for capacity usage, as it was before this change. WORM and ARP will no longer be included in your future bills.
- If your current accounts do not include these features, you can now opt for WORM and ARP at no additional cost.
- All Cloud Volumes ONTAP offerings for any new accounts will exclude charges for WORM and ARP.

Learn more about these features:

- [Enable NetApp ransomware protection solutions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)
- [WORM storage](#)

23 August 2024

Canada West region now supported in AWS

The Canada West region is now supported in AWS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions, see the [Global Regions Map under AWS](#).

22 August 2024

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.1 GA

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.1 General Availability release in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

8 August 2024

Edge Cache licensing packages deprecated

Edge Cache capacity-based licensing packages will no longer be available for future deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. However, you can use the API to avail this functionality.

Minimum version support for Flash Cache in Azure

The minimum Cloud Volumes ONTAP version required for configuring Flash Cache in Azure is 9.13.1 GA. You can only use ONTAP 9.13.1 GA and later versions for deploying Flash Cache on Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in Azure.

For supported configurations, see [Supported configurations in Azure](#).

Free trials for marketplace subscriptions deprecated

The 30-day automatic free trial or evaluation license for pay-as-you-go subscriptions in cloud provider's marketplace will no longer be available in Cloud Volumes ONTAP. The charging for any type of marketplace subscription (PAYGO or annual contract) will be activated from the first use, without any free trial period.

10 June 2024

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.15.0 in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

17 May 2024

Amazon Web Services Local Zones support

Support for AWS Local Zones is now available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA deployments. AWS Local Zones are an infrastructure deployment where storage, compute, database, and other select AWS services are located close to large cities and industry areas.



AWS Local Zones are supported when using BlueXP in standard mode. At this time, AWS Local Zones are not supported when using BlueXP in restricted mode or private mode.

For more information on AWS Local Zones with HA Deployments, refer to [AWS Local Zones](#).

23 April 2024

New regions supported for multiple availability zone deployments in Azure

The following regions now support HA multiple availability zone deployments in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later:

- Germany West Central
- Poland Central
- West US 3
- Israel Central
- Italy North
- Canada Central

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

Johannesburg region now supported in Google Cloud

The Johannesburg region (`africa-south1` region) is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Google Cloud](#).

Volume templates and tags no longer supported

You can no longer create a volume from a template or edit a volume's tags. These actions were associated with the BlueXP remediation service, which is no longer available.

8 March 2024

Amazon Instant Metadata Service v2 support

In AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP, the Mediator, and the Connector now support Amazon Instant Metadata Service v2 (IMDSv2) for all functions. IMDSv2 provides enhanced protection against vulnerabilities. Only IMDSv1 was previously supported.

If required by your security policies, you can configure your EC2 instances to use IMDSv2. For instructions, refer to [BlueXP setup and administration documentation for managing existing Connectors](#).

5 March 2024

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1 GA

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1 General Availability release in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

2 February 2024

Support for Edv5-series VMs in Azure

Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports the following Edv5-series VMs starting with the 9.14.1 release.

- E4ds_v5
- E8ds_v5
- E20s_v5
- E32ds_v5
- E48ds_v5
- E64ds_v5

[Supported configurations in Azure](#)

16 January 2024

Patch releases in BlueXP

Patch releases are available in BlueXP only for the latest three versions of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

8 January 2024

New VMs for Azure multiple availability zones

Starting from Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1, the following VM types support Azure multiple availability zones for new and existing high-availability pair deployments:

- L16s_v3
- L32s_v3
- L48s_v3
- L64s_v3

[Supported configurations in Azure](#)

6 December 2023

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1 RC1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.1 in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

300 TiB FlexVol volume max limit

You can now create a FlexVol volume up to the maximum size of 300 TiB with System Manager and the ONTAP CLI starting from Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 P2 and 9.13.0 P2, and in BlueXP starting from Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1.

- [Storage limits in AWS](#)
- [Storage limits in Azure](#)
- [Storage limits in Google Cloud](#)

5 December 2023

The following changes were introduced.

New region support in Azure

Single availability zone region support

The following regions now support highly-available single availability zone deployments in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later:

- Tel Aviv
- Milan

Multiple availability zone region support

The following regions now support highly-available multiple availability zone deployments in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later:

- Central India
- Norway East
- Switzerland North
- South Africa North
- United Arab Emirates North

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

10 November 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.35 release of the Connector.

Berlin region now supported in Google Cloud

The Berlin region is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Google Cloud](#).

8 November 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.35 release of the Connector.

Tel Aviv region now supported in AWS

The Tel Aviv region is now supported in AWS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under AWS](#).

1 November 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.34 release of the Connector.

Saudi Arabia region now supported in Google Cloud

The Saudi Arabia region is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Google Cloud](#).

23 October 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.34 release of the Connector.

New regions supported for HA multiple availability zone deployments in Azure

The following regions in Azure now support highly-available multiple availability zone deployments for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later:

- Australia East
- East Asia
- France Central
- North Europe
- Qatar Central
- Sweden Central
- West Europe
- West US 2

For a list of all regions that support multiple availability zones, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

6 October 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.34 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.14.0 General Availability release in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

10 September 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.33 release of the Connector.

Support for Lsv3-series VMs in Azure

The L48s_v3 and L64s_v3 instance types are now supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure for single node and high-availability pair deployments with shared managed disks in single and multiple availability zones, starting with the 9.13.1 release. These instance types support Flash Cache.

[View supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)

[View storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)

30 July 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.32 release of the Connector.

Flash Cache and high write speed support in Google Cloud

Flash Cache and high write speed can be enabled separately in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 and later. High write speed is available on all supported instance types. Flash Cache is supported on the following instance types:

- n2-standard-16
- n2-standard-32
- n2-standard-48
- n2-standard-64

You can use these features separately or together on both single node and high-availability pair deployments.

[Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud](#)

Usage reports enhancements

Various improvements to the displayed information within the usage reports are now available. The following are enhancements to the usage reports:

- The TiB unit is now included in the name of columns.
- A new "node(s)" field for serial numbers is now included.
- A new "Workload Type" column is now included under the Storage VMs usage report.
- Working environment names now included in Storage VMs and Volume usage reports.
- Volume type "file" is now labeled "Primary (Read/Write)".
- Volume type "secondary" is now labeled "Secondary (DP)".

For more information on usage reports, refer to [Download usage reports](#).

26 July 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.31 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 GA

BlueXP can now deploy and manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 General Availability release in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

2 July 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.31 release of the Connector.

Support for HA multiple availability zone deployments in Azure

The Japan East and Korea Central in Azure now supports HA multiple availability zone deployments for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

For a list of all regions that support multiple availability zones, refer to the [Global Regions Map under Azure](#).

Autonomous Ransomware Protection support

Autonomous Ransomware Protection (ARP) is now supported on Cloud Volumes ONTAP. ARP support is available on Cloud Volumes ONTAP version 9.12.1 and higher.

To learn more about ARP with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, refer to [Autonomous Ransomware Protection](#).

26 June 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.30 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 RC1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

4 June 2023

The following change was introduced with the 3.9.30 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade version selector update

Through the Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP page, you can now choose to upgrade to the latest available version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP or an older version.

To learn more about upgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP through BlueXP, refer to [Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

7 May 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.29 release of the Connector.

Qatar region now supported in Google Cloud

The Qatar region is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector for Cloud

Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

Sweden Central region now supported in Azure

The Sweden Central region is now supported in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

Support for HA multiple availability zone deployments in Azure Australia East

The Australia East region in Azure now supports HA multiple availability zone deployments for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

Charging usage breakdown

Now you can find out what you're being charged for when you're subscribed to capacity-based licenses. The following types of usage reports are available for download from the digital wallet in BlueXP. The usage reports provide capacity details of your subscriptions and tell you how you're being charged for the resources in your Cloud Volumes ONTAP subscriptions. The downloadable reports can be easily shared with others.

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP package usage
- High-level usage
- Storage VMs usage
- Volumes usage

For more information, refer to [Manage capacity-based licenses](#).

Notification now displays when accessing BlueXP without a marketplace subscription

A notification now displays whenever you access Cloud Volumes ONTAP in BlueXP without a marketplace subscription. The notification states "a marketplace subscription for this working environment is required to be compliant with Cloud Volumes ONTAP terms and conditions."

4 April 2023

Support for China regions for AWS

Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA, China regions are now supported in AWS as follows.

- Single node systems are supported.
- Licenses purchased directly from NetApp are supported.

For regional availability, refer to the [Global Regions Maps for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

3 April 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.28 release of the Connector.

Turin region now supported in Google Cloud

The Turin region is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and later.

BlueXP digital wallet enhancement

The BlueXP digital wallet now shows the licensed capacity that you purchased with marketplace private offers.

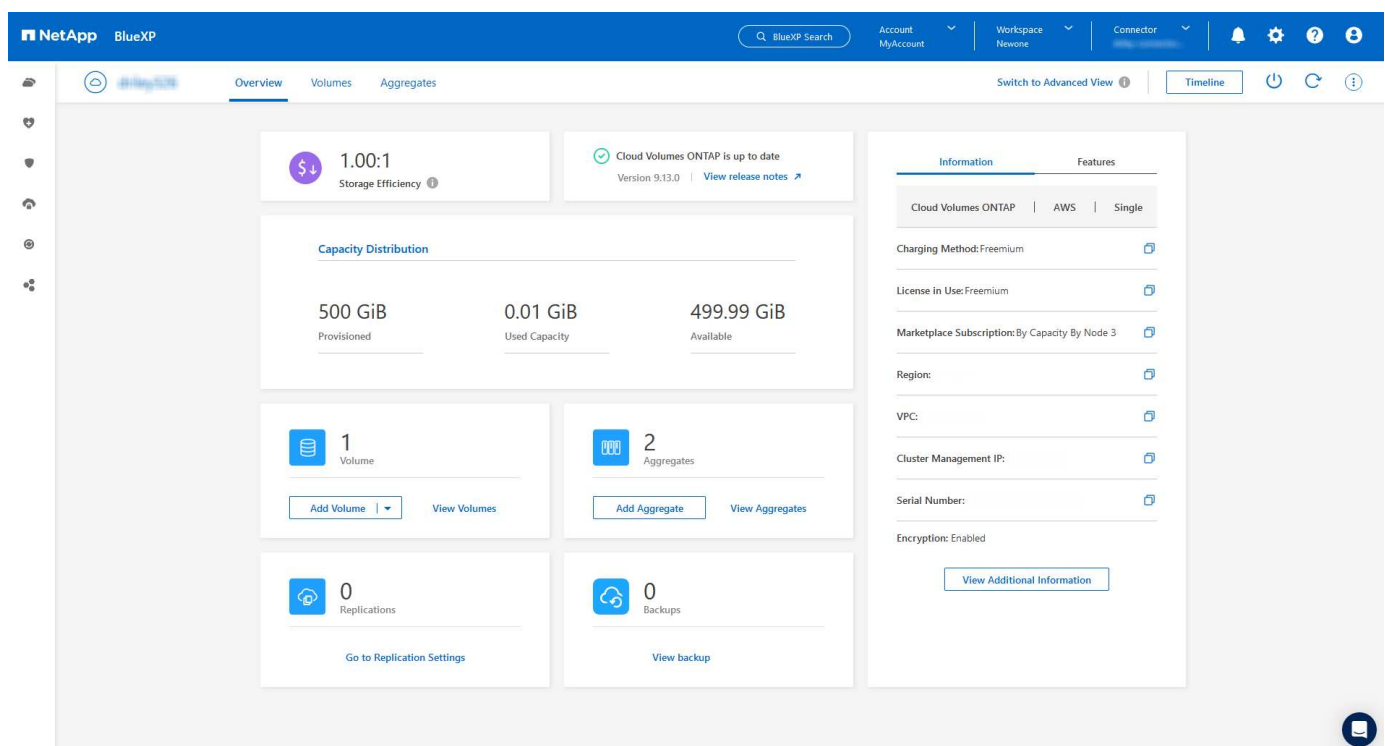
[Learn how to view the consumed capacity in your account.](#)

Support for comments during volume creation

This release enables you to make comments when creating an Cloud Volumes ONTAP FlexGroup volume or FlexVol volume when using the API.

BlueXP user interface redesign for Cloud Volumes ONTAP Overview, Volumes, and Aggregates pages

BlueXP now has a redesigned user interface for Cloud Volumes ONTAP Overview, Volumes, and Aggregates pages. The tile-based design presents more comprehensive information in each tile for a better user experience.




FlexGroup Volumes viewable through Cloud Volumes ONTAP

FlexGroup volumes created through ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI directly are now viewable through the redesigned Volumes tile in BlueXP. Identical to the information provided for FlexVol volumes, BlueXP provides detailed information for created FlexGroup volumes through a dedicated Volumes tile.



Currently, you can only view existing FlexGroup volumes under BlueXP. The ability to create FlexGroup volumes in BlueXP is not available but planned for a future release.

FlexGroup Volume






Volume

ONLINE

Manage Volume

INFO

Disk Type	GP3
Storage VM	svm_name
Tiering Policy	Snapshot only
Tags	3
Protection	  

CAPACITY

Provisioned	150 TiB
EBS Used	40.2 TiB
S3 Used	26.3 TiB

[Learn more about viewing created FlexGroup volumes.](#)

13 March 2023

Support for China regions in Azure

China North 3 region is now supported for single node deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA and 9.13.0 GA in Azure. Only licenses purchased directly from NetApp (BYOL licenses) are supported in these regions.



Fresh deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in China regions are supported only in 9.12.1 GA and 9.13.0 GA. You can upgrade these versions to later patches and releases of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. If you want to deploy later Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions in China regions, contact NetApp Support.

For regional availability, refer to the [Global Regions Maps for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

5 March 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.27 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.0 in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

16 TiB and 32 Tib support in Azure

Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports 16 TiB and 32 TiB disk sizes for high-availability deployments running on managed disks in Azure.

Learn more about [supported disk sizes in Azure](#).

MTEKM license

The Multi-tenant Encryption Key Management (MTEKM) license is now included with new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems running version 9.12.1 GA or later.

Multi-tenant external key management enables individual storage VMs (SVMs) to maintain their own keys through a KMIP server when using NetApp Volume Encryption.

[Learn how to encrypt volumes with NetApp encryption solutions.](#)

Support for environments without internet

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is now supported in any cloud environment that has complete isolation from the internet. Only node-based licensing (BYOL) is supported in these environments. Capacity-based licensing is not supported. To get started, manually install the Connector software, log in to the BlueXP console that's running on the Connector, add your BYOL license to the BlueXP digital wallet, and then deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [Install the Connector in a location without internet access](#)
- [Access the BlueXP console on the Connector](#)
- [Add an unassigned license](#)

Flash Cache and high write speed in Google Cloud

Support for Flash Cache, high write speed, and a high maximum transmission unit (MTU) of 8,896 bytes is now available for select instances with the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.0 release.

Learn more about [supported configurations by license for Google Cloud](#).

5 February 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.26 release of the Connector.

Placement group creation in AWS

A new configuration setting is now available for placement group creation with AWS HA single availability zone (AZ) deployments. Now you can choose to bypass failed placement group creations and allow AWS HA single AZ deployments to complete successfully.

For detailed information on how to configure the placement group creation setting, refer to [Configure placement group creation for AWS HA Single AZ](#).

Private DNS zone configuration update

A new configuration setting is now available so that you can avoid creating a link between a private DNS zone and a virtual network when using Azure Private Links. Creation is enabled by default.

[Provide BlueXP with details about your Azure Private DNS](#)

WORM storage and data tiering

You can now enable both data tiering and WORM storage together when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 system or later. Enabling data tiering with WORM storage allows you to tier the data to an object store in the cloud.

[Learn about WORM storage.](#)

1 January 2023

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.25 release of the Connector.

Licensing packages available in Google Cloud

Optimized and Edge Cache capacity-based licensing packages are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the Google Cloud Marketplace as a pay-as-you-go offering or as an annual contract.

Refer to [Cloud Volumes ONTAP licensing](#).

Default configuration for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The Multi-tenant Encryption Key Management (MTEKM) license is no longer included in new Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployments.

For more information on the ONTAP feature licenses automatically installed with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, refer to [Default Configuration for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

15 December 2022

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.0 in AWS and Google Cloud.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

8 December 2022

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1, which includes support for new features and additional cloud provider regions.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

4 December 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.24 release of the Connector.

WORM + Cloud Backup now available during Cloud Volumes ONTAP creation

The ability to activate both write once, read many (WORM) and Cloud Backup features is now available during the Cloud Volumes ONTAP creation process.

Israel region now supported in Google Cloud

The Israel region is now supported in Google Cloud for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1 P3 and later.

15 November 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.23 release of the Connector.

ONTAP S3 license in Google Cloud

An ONTAP S3 license is now included on new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems running version 9.12.1 or later in Google Cloud Platform.

[ONTAP documentation: Learn how to configure and manage S3 object storage services](#)

6 November 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.23 release of the Connector.

Moving resource groups in Azure

You can now move a working environment from one resource group to a different resource group in Azure within the same Azure subscription.

For more information, refer to [Moving resource groups](#).

NDMP-copy certification

NDMP-copy is now certified for use with Cloud Volume ONTAP.

For information on how to configure and use NDMP, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: NDMP configuration overview](#).

Managed disk encryption support for Azure

A new Azure permission has been added that now allows you to encrypt all managed disks upon creation.

For more information on this new functionality, refer to [Set up Cloud Volumes ONTAP to use a customer-managed key in Azure](#).

18 September 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.22 release of the Connector.

Digital Wallet enhancements

- The Digital Wallet now shows a summary of the Optimized I/O licensing package and the provisioned WORM capacity for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems across your account.

These details can help you better understand how you're being charged and whether you need to purchase additional capacity.

[Learn how to view the consumed capacity in your account.](#)

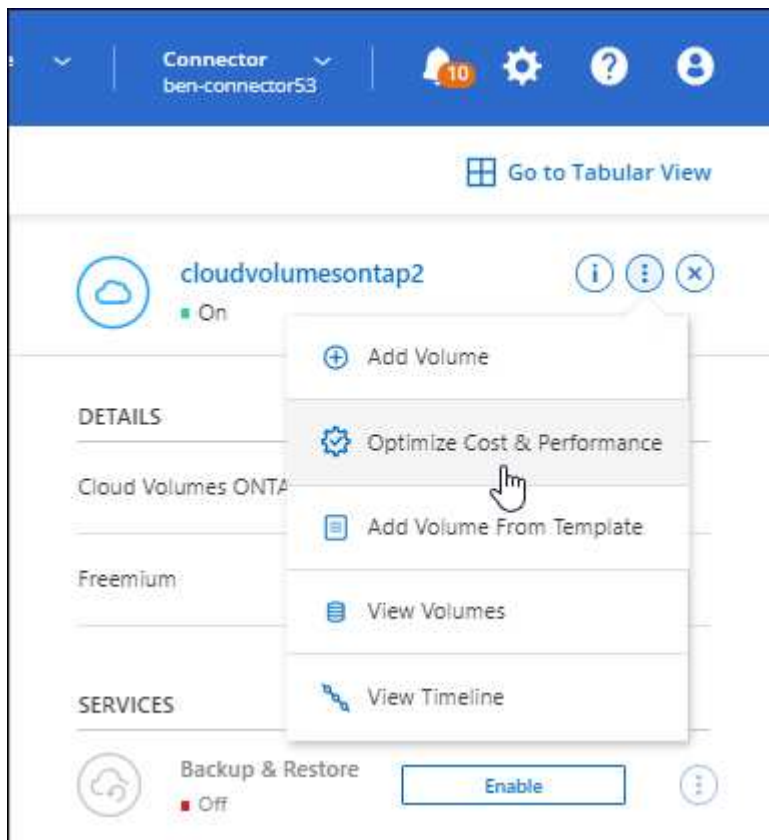
- You can now change from one charging method to the Optimized charging method.

[Learn how to change charging methods.](#)

Optimize cost and performance

You can now optimize the cost and performance of a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system directly from the Canvas.

After you select a working environment, you can choose the **Optimize Cost & Performance** option to change the instance type for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Choosing a smaller-sized instance can help you reduce costs, while changing to a larger-sized instance can help you optimize performance.



AutoSupport notifications

BlueXP will now generate a notification if a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is unable to send AutoSupport messages. The notification includes a link to instructions that you can use to troubleshoot networking issues.

31 July 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.21 release of the Connector.

MTEKM license

The Multi-tenant Encryption Key Management (MTEKM) license is now included with new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems running version 9.11.1 or later.

Multi-tenant external key management enables individual storage VMs (SVMs) to maintain their own keys through a KMIP server when using NetApp Volume Encryption.

[Learn how to encrypt volumes with NetApp encryption solutions.](#)

Proxy server

BlueXP now automatically configures your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to use the Connector as a proxy server, if an outbound internet connection isn't available to send AutoSupport messages.

AutoSupport proactively monitors the health of your system and sends messages to NetApp technical support.

The only requirement is to ensure that the Connector's security group allows *inbound* connections over port 3128. You'll need to open this port after you deploy the Connector.

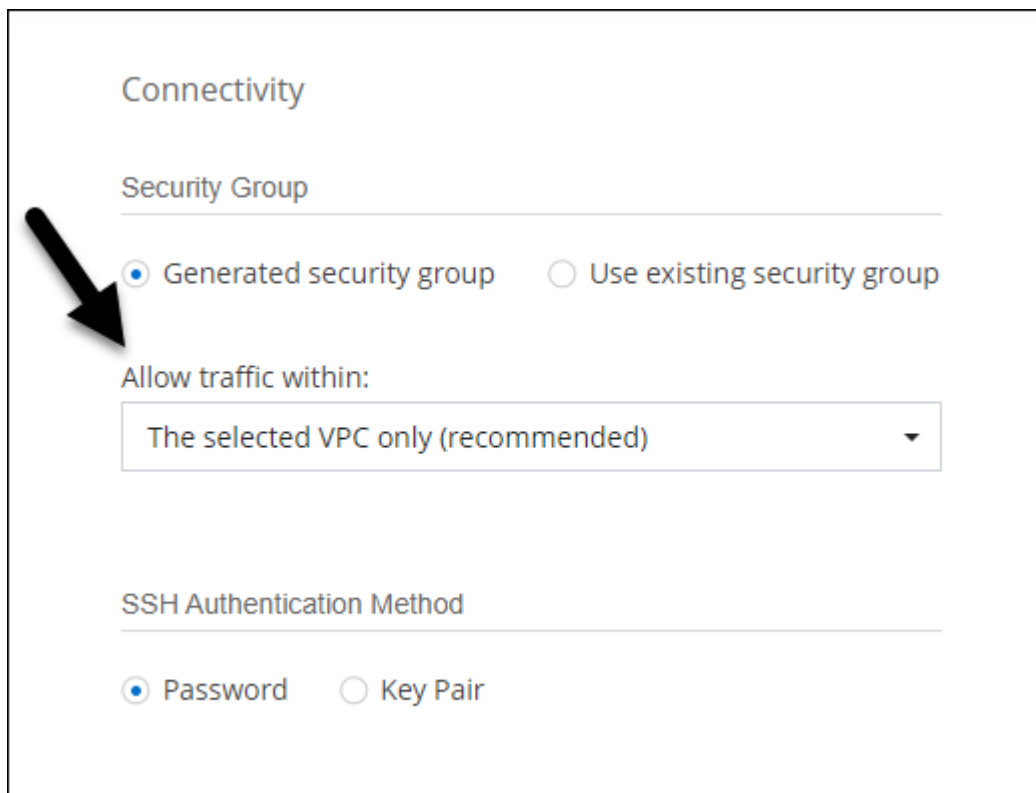
Change charging method

You can now change the charging method for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that uses capacity-based licensing. For example, if you deployed a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system with the Essentials package, you can change it to the Professional package if your business needs changed. This feature is available from the Digital Wallet.

[Learn how to change charging methods.](#)

Security group enhancement

When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, the user interface now enables you to choose whether you want the predefined security group to allow traffic within the selected network only (recommended) or all networks.



Connectivity

Security Group

☒ Generated security group ☐ Use existing security group

Allow traffic within:

The selected VPC only (recommended) ▼

SSH Authentication Method

☒ Password ☐ Key Pair

18 July 2022

New licensing packages in Azure

Two new capacity-based licensing packages are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure when you pay through an Azure Marketplace subscription:

- **Optimized:** Pay for provisioned capacity and I/O operations separately
- **Edge Cache:** Licensing for [Cloud Volumes Edge Cache](#)

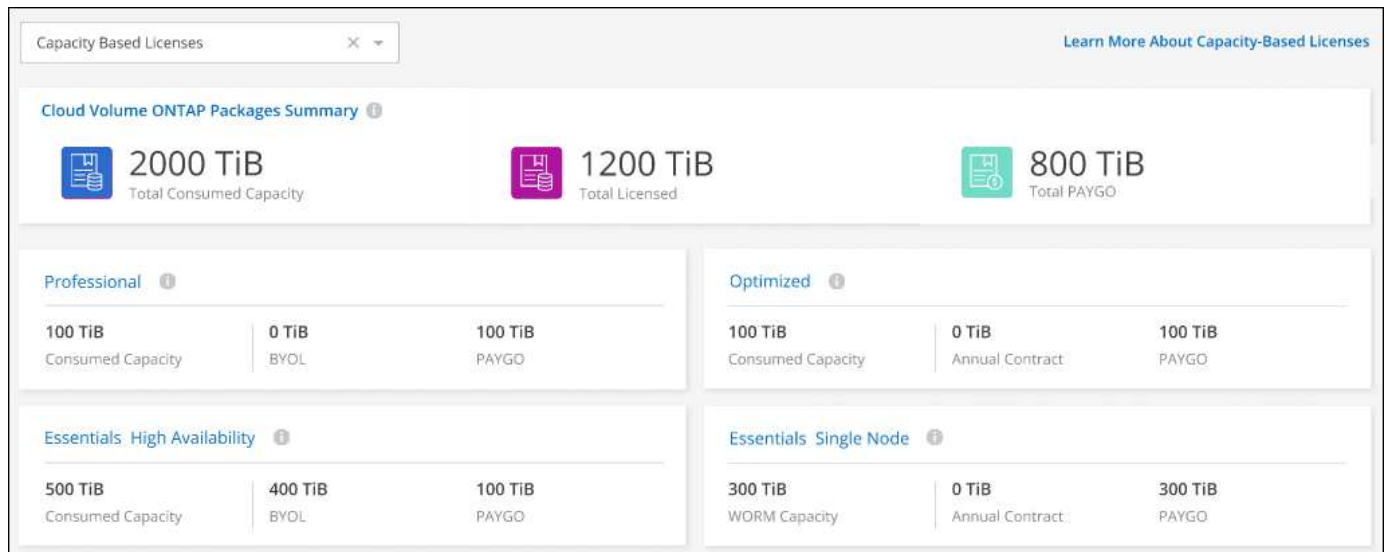
[Learn more about these licensing packages.](#)

3 July 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.20 release of the Connector.

Digital Wallet

The Digital Wallet now shows you the total consumed capacity in your account and the consumed capacity by licensing package. This can help you understand how you're being charged and whether you need to purchase additional capacity.



Elastic Volumes enhancement

BlueXP now supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature when creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment from the user interface. The Elastic Volumes feature is enabled by default when using gp3 or io1 disks. You can choose the initial capacity based on your storage needs and revise it after Cloud Volumes ONTAP is deployed.

[Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes in AWS.](#)

ONTAP S3 license in AWS

An ONTAP S3 license is now included on new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems running version 9.11.0 or later in AWS.

[ONTAP documentation: Learn how to configure and manage S3 object storage services](#)

New Azure Cloud region support

Starting with the 9.10.1 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP is now supported in the Azure West US 3 region.

[View the full list of supported regions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

ONTAP S3 license in Azure

An ONTAP S3 license is now included on new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems running version 9.9.1 or later in Azure.

[ONTAP documentation: Learn how to configure and manage S3 object storage services](#)

7 June 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.19 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1, which includes support for new features and additional cloud provider regions.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

New Advanced View

If you need to perform advanced management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can do so using ONTAP System Manager, which is a management interface that's provided with an ONTAP system. We have included the System Manager interface directly inside BlueXP so that you don't need to leave BlueXP for advanced management.

This Advanced View is available as a Preview with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.0 and later. We plan to refine this experience and add enhancements in upcoming releases. Please send us feedback by using the in-product chat.

[Learn more about the Advanced View.](#)

Support for Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes

Support for the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature with a Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate provides better performance and additional capacity, while enabling BlueXP to automatically increase the underlying disk capacity as needed.

Support for Elastic Volumes is available starting with *new* Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.0 systems and with gp3 and io1 EBS disk types.

[Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

Note that support for Elastic Volumes requires new AWS permissions for the Connector:

```
"ec2:DescribeVolumesModifications",  
"ec2:ModifyVolume",
```

Be sure to provide these permissions to each set of AWS credentials that you've added to BlueXP. [View the latest Connector policy for AWS.](#)

Support for deploying HA pairs in shared AWS subnets

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1 includes support for AWS VPC sharing. This release of the Connector enables you to deploy an HA pair in an AWS shared subnet when using the API.

[Learn how to deploy an HA pair in a shared subnet.](#)

Limited network access when using service endpoints

BlueXP now limits network access when using a VNet service endpoint for connections between Cloud Volumes ONTAP and storage accounts. BlueXP uses a service endpoint if you disable Azure Private Link connections.

[Learn more about Azure Private Link connections with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Support for creating storage VMs in Google Cloud

Multiple storage VMs are now supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud, starting with the 9.11.1 release. Starting with this release of the Connector, BlueXP enables you to create storage VMs on Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in Google Cloud by using the API.

Support for creating storage VMs requires new Google Cloud permissions for the Connector:

- `compute.instanceGroups.get`
- `compute.addresses.get`

Note that you must use the ONTAP CLI or System Manager to create a storage VM on a single node system.

- [Learn more about storage VM limits in Google Cloud](#)
- [Learn how to create data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud](#)

2 May 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.18 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.0.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Enhancement to mediator upgrades

When BlueXP upgrades the mediator for an HA pair, it now validates that a new mediator image is available before it deletes the boot disk. This change ensures that the mediator can continue to operate successfully if the upgrade process is unsuccessful.

K8s tab has been removed

The K8s tab was deprecated in a previous release, and has now been removed.

Annual contract in Azure

The Essentials and Professional packages are now available in Azure through an annual contract. You can contact your NetApp sales representative to purchase an annual contract. The contract is available as a private offer in the Azure Marketplace.

After NetApp shares the private offer with you, you can select the annual plan when you subscribe from the Azure Marketplace during working environment creation.

[Learn more about licensing.](#)

S3 Glacier Instant Retrieval

You can now store tiered data in the Amazon S3 Glacier Instant Retrieval storage class.

[Learn how to change the storage class for tiered data.](#)

New AWS permissions required for the Connector

The following permissions are now required to create an AWS spread placement group when deploying an HA pair in a single Availability Zone (AZ):

```
"ec2:DescribePlacementGroups",  
"iam:GetRolePolicy",
```

These permissions are now required to optimize how BlueXP creates the placement group.

Be sure to provide these permissions to each set of AWS credentials that you've added to BlueXP. [View the latest Connector policy for AWS.](#)

New Google Cloud region support

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is now supported in the following Google Cloud regions starting with the 9.10.1 release:

- Delhi (asia-south2)
- Melbourne (australia-southeast2)
- Milan (europe-west8) - single node only
- Santiago (southamerica-west1) - single node only

[View the full list of supported regions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

Support for n2-standard-16 in Google Cloud

The n2-standard-16 machine type is now supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud, starting with the 9.10.1 release.

[View supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud](#)

Enhancements to Google Cloud firewall policies

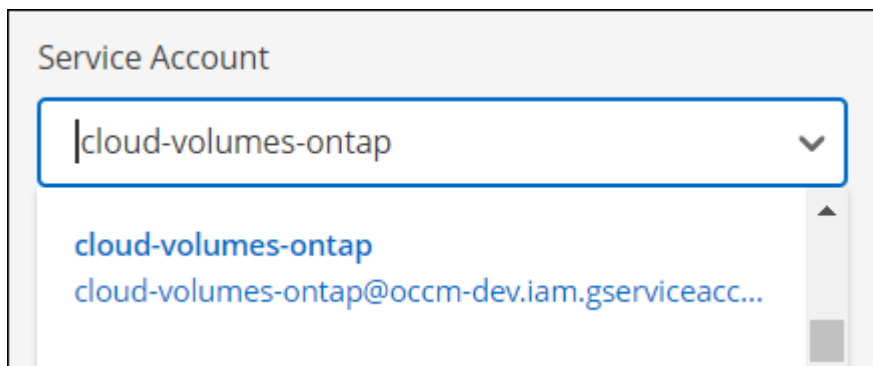
- When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in Google Cloud, BlueXP will now display all existing firewall policies in a VPC.

Previously, BlueXP wouldn't display any policies in VPC-1, VPC-2, or VPC-3 that didn't have a target tag.

- When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP single node system in Google Cloud, you can now choose whether you want the predefined firewall policy to allow traffic within the selected VPC only (recommended) or all VPCs.

Enhancement to Google Cloud service accounts

When you select the Google Cloud service account to use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, BlueXP now displays the email address that's associated with each service account. Viewing the email address can make it easier to distinguish between service accounts that share the same name.



3 April 2022

System Manager link has been removed

We have removed the System Manager link that was previously available from within a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

You can still connect to System Manager by entering the cluster management IP address in a web browser that has a connection to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. [Learn more about connecting to System Manager.](#)

Charging for WORM storage

Now that the introductory special rate has expired, you will now be charged for using WORM storage. Charging is hourly, according to the total provisioned capacity of WORM volumes. This applies to new and existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

[Learn about pricing for WORM storage.](#)

27 February 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.16 release of the Connector.

Redesigned volume wizard

The create new volume wizard that we recently introduced is now available when creating a volume on a specific aggregate from the **Advanced allocation** option.

[Learn how to create volumes on a specific aggregate.](#)

9 February 2022

Marketplace updates

- The Essentials package and Professional package are now available in all cloud provider marketplaces.

These by-capacity charging methods enable you to pay by the hour or to purchase an annual contract directly from your cloud provider. You still have the option to purchase a by-capacity license directly from NetApp.

If you have an existing subscription in a cloud marketplace, you're automatically subscribed to these new offerings as well. You can choose by-capacity charging when you deploy a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

If you're a new customer, BlueXP will prompt you to subscribe when you create a new working environment.

- By-node licensing from all cloud provider marketplaces is deprecated and no longer available for new subscribers. This includes annual contracts and hourly subscriptions (Explore, Standard, and Premium).

This charging method is still available for existing customers who have an active subscription.

[Learn more about the licensing options for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

6 February 2022

Exchange unassigned licenses

If you have an unassigned node-based license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP that you haven't used, you can now exchange the license by converting it to a Cloud Backup license, Cloud Data Sense license, or Cloud Tiering license.

This action revokes the Cloud Volumes ONTAP license and creates a dollar-equivalent license for the service with the same expiry date.

[Learn how to exchange unassigned node-based licenses.](#)

30 January 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.15 release of the Connector.

Redesigned licensing selection

We redesigned the licensing selection screen when creating a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment. The changes highlight the by-capacity charging methods that were introduced in July 2021 and support upcoming offerings through the cloud provider marketplaces.

Digital Wallet update

We updated the **Digital Wallet** by consolidating Cloud Volumes ONTAP licenses in a single tab.

2 January 2022

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.14 release of the Connector.

Support for additional Azure VM types

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is now supported with the following VM types in Microsoft Azure, starting with the 9.10.1 release:

- E4ds_v4
- E8ds_v4
- E32ds_v4
- E48ds_v4

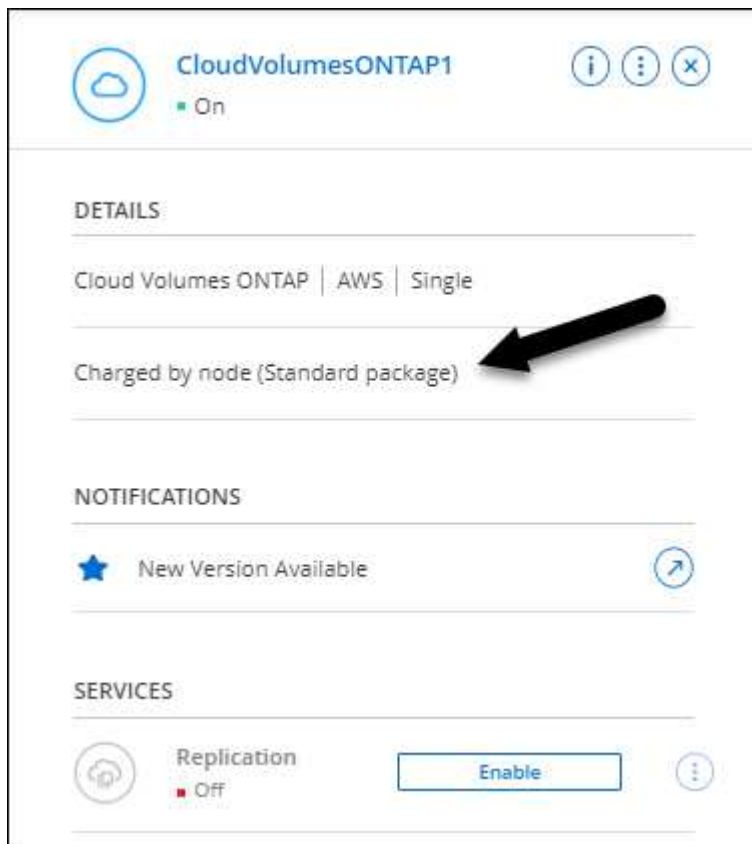
Go to the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) for more details about supported configurations.

FlexClone charging update

If you use a [capacity-based license](#) for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you are no longer charged for the capacity used by FlexClone volumes.

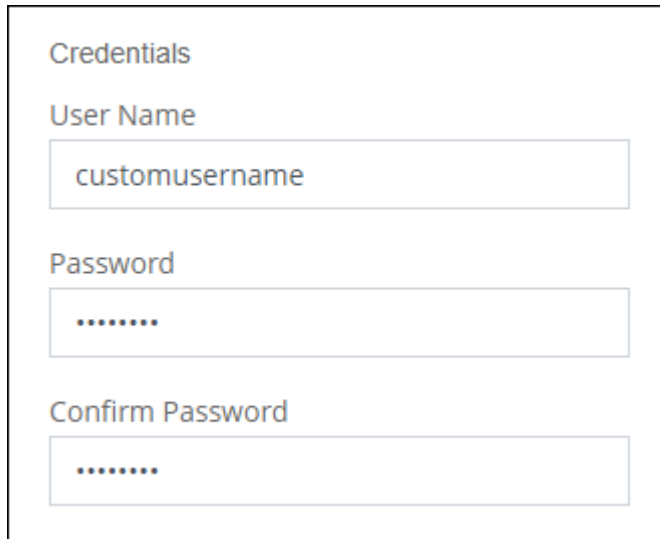
Charging method now displayed

BlueXP now shows the charging method for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment in the right panel of the Canvas.



Choose your user name

When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, you now have the option to enter your preferred user name, instead of the default admin user name.



Credentials

User Name

customusername

Password

.....

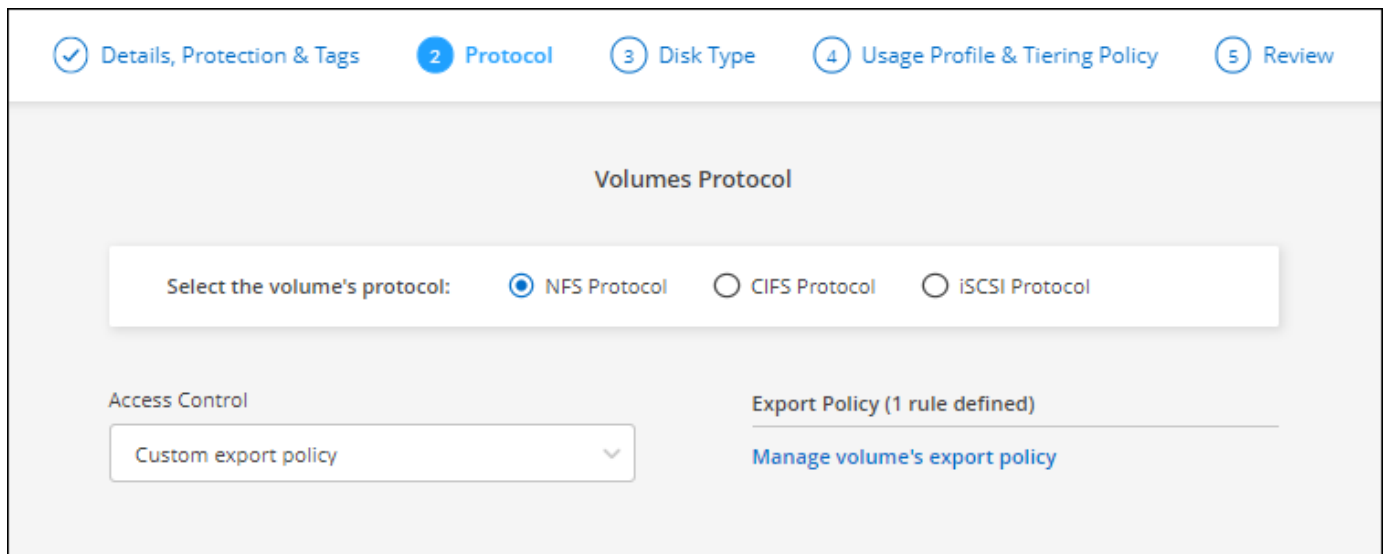
Confirm Password

.....

Volume creation enhancements

We made a few enhancements to volume creation:

- We redesigned the create volume wizard for ease of use.
- You can now choose a custom export policy for NFS.



✓ Details, Protection & Tags 2 Protocol 3 Disk Type 4 Usage Profile & Tiering Policy 5 Review

Volumes Protocol

Select the volume's protocol: ☒ NFS Protocol ☐ CIFS Protocol ☐ iSCSI Protocol

Access Control

Custom export policy

Export Policy (1 rule defined)

[Manage volume's export policy](#)

28 November 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.13 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.1.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

NetApp Keystone Subscriptions

You can now use Keystone Subscriptions to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs.

A Keystone Subscription is a pay-as-you-grow subscription-based service that delivers a seamless hybrid cloud experience for those preferring OpEx consumption models to upfront CapEx or leasing.

A Keystone Subscription is supported with all new versions of Cloud Volumes ONTAP that you can deploy from BlueXP.

- [Learn more about NetApp Keystone Subscriptions.](#)
- [Learn how to get started with Keystone Subscriptions in BlueXP.](#)

New AWS region support

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is now supported in the AWS Asia Pacific (Osaka) region (ap-northeast-3).

Port reduction

Ports 8023 and 49000 are no longer open on Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in Azure for both single node systems and HA pairs.

This change applies to *new* Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems starting with the 3.9.13 release of the Connector.

4 October 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.11 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.0.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Reduced deployment time

We reduced the amount of time that it takes to deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment in Microsoft Azure or in Google Cloud when normal write speed is enabled. The deployment time is now 3-4 minutes shorter on average.

2 September 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.10 release of the Connector.

Customer-managed encryption key in Azure

Data is automatically encrypted on Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure using [Azure Storage Service Encryption](#) with a Microsoft-managed key. But you can now use your own customer-managed encryption key instead by completing the following steps:

1. From Azure, create a key vault and then generate a key in that vault.

2. From BlueXP, use the API to create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment that uses the key.

[Learn more about these steps.](#)

7 July 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.8 release of the Connector.

New charging methods

New charging methods are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.


- **Capacity-based BYOL:** A capacity-based license enables you to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP per TiB of capacity. The license is associated with your NetApp account and enables you to create as multiple Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, as long as enough capacity is available through your license. Capacity-based licensing is available in the form of a package, either *Essentials* or *Professional*.
- **Freemium offering:** Freemium enables you to use all Cloud Volumes ONTAP features free of charge from NetApp (cloud provider charges still apply). You're limited to 500 GiB of provisioned capacity per system and there's no support contract. You can have up to 10 Freemium systems.


[Learn more about these licensing options.](#)

Here's an example of the charging methods that you can choose from:

Cloud Volumes ONTAP Charging Methods

[Learn more about our charging methods](#)

☐ Pay-As-You-Go by the hour


☒ Bring your own license

Bring your own license type

Capacity-Based

Package

Professional

☐ Freemium (Up to 500GB)

WORM storage available for general use

Write once, read many (WORM) storage is no longer in Preview and is now available for general use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP. [Learn more about WORM storage](#).

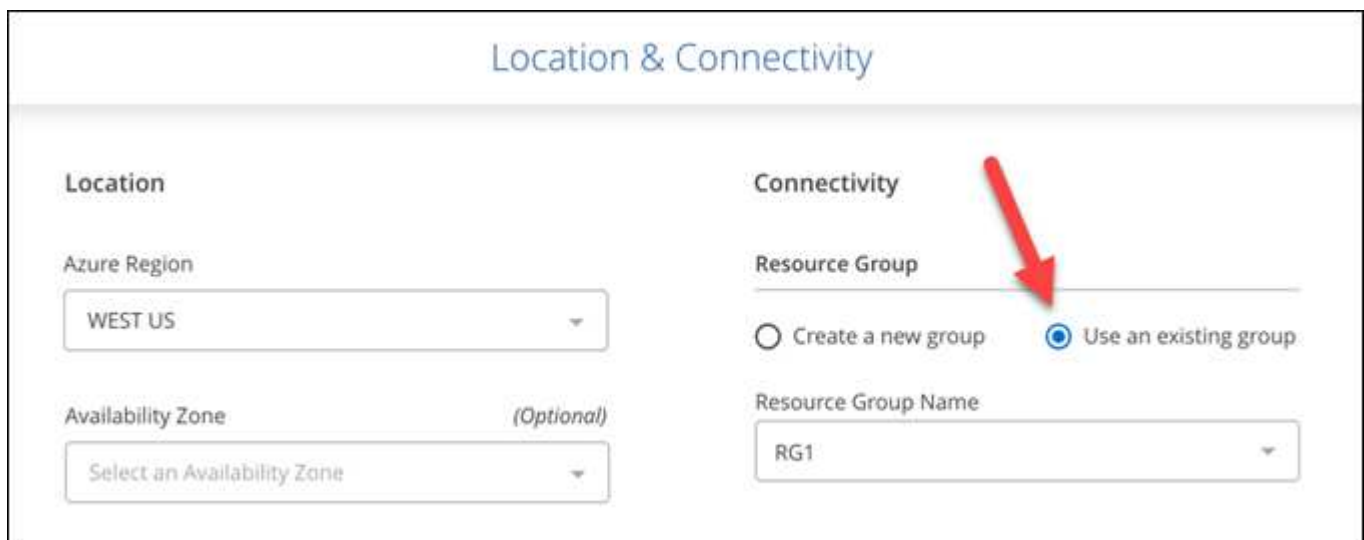
Support for m5dn.24xlarge in AWS

Starting with the 9.9.1 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports the m5dn.24xlarge instance type with the following charging methods: PAYGO Premium, bring your own license (BYOL), and Freemium.

[View supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#).

Select existing Azure resource groups

When creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in Azure, you now have the option to select an existing resource group for the VM and its associated resources.



The following permissions enable BlueXP to remove Cloud Volumes ONTAP resources from a resource group, in case of deployment failure or deletion:

```
"Microsoft.Network/privateEndpoints/delete",  
"Microsoft.Compute/availabilitySets/delete",
```

Be sure to provide these permissions to each set of Azure credentials that you've added to BlueXP. [View the latest Connector policy for Azure](#).

Blob public access now disabled in Azure

As a security enhancement, BlueXP now disables **Blob public access** when creating a storage account for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Azure Private Link enhancement

By default, BlueXP now enables an Azure Private Link connection on the boot diagnostics storage account for new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

This means *all* storage accounts for Cloud Volumes ONTAP will now use a private link.

[Learn more about using an Azure Private Link with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Balanced persistent disks in Google Cloud

Starting with the 9.9.1 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports Balanced persistent disks (pd-balanced).

These SSDs balance performance and cost by providing lower IOPS per GiB.

custom-4-16384 no longer supported in Google Cloud

The custom-4-16384 machine type is no longer supported with new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

If you have an existing system running on this machine type, you can keep using it, but we recommend switching to the n2-standard-4 machine type.

[View supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.](#)

30 May 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.7 release of the Connector.

New Professional Package in AWS

A new Professional Package enables you to bundle Cloud Volumes ONTAP and Cloud Backup Service by using an annual contract from the AWS Marketplace. Payment is per TiB. This subscription doesn't enable you to back up on-premises data.

If you choose this payment option, you can provision up to 2 PiB per Cloud Volumes ONTAP system through EBS disks and tiering to S3 object storage (single node or HA).

Go to the [AWS Marketplace page](#) to view pricing details and go to the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) to learn more about this licensing option.

Tags on EBS volumes in AWS

BlueXP now adds tags to EBS volumes when it creates a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment. The tags were previously created after Cloud Volumes ONTAP was deployed.

This change can help if your organization uses service control policies (SCPs) to manage permissions.

Minimum cooling period for auto tiering policy

If you enabled data tiering on a volume using the *auto* tiering policy, you can now adjust the minimum cooling period using the API.

[Learn how to adjust the minimum cooling period.](#)

Enhancement to custom export policies

When you create a new NFS volume, BlueXP now displays custom export policies in ascending order, making it easier for you to find the export policy that you need.

Deletion of old cloud snapshots

BlueXP now deletes older cloud snapshots of root and boot disks that are created when a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is deployed and every time its powered down. Only the two most recent snapshots are retained for both the root and boot volumes.

This enhancement helps reduce cloud provider costs by removing snapshots that are no longer needed.

Note that a Connector requires a new permission to delete Azure snapshots. [View the latest Connector policy for Azure.](#)

```
"Microsoft.Compute/snapshots/delete"
```

24 May 2021

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.1

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.1.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

11 Apr 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.5 release of the Connector.

Logical space reporting

BlueXP now enables logical space reporting on the initial storage VM that it creates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

When space is reported logically, ONTAP reports the volume space such that all the physical space saved by the storage efficiency features are also reported as used.

Support for gp3 disks in AWS

Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports *General Purpose SSD (gp3)* disks, starting with the 9.7 release. gp3 disks are the lowest-cost SSDs that balance cost and performance for a broad range of workloads.

[Learn more about using gp3 disks with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Cold HDD disks no longer supported in AWS

Cloud Volumes ONTAP no longer supports Cold HDD (sc1) disks.

TLS 1.2 for Azure storage accounts

When BlueXP creates storage accounts in Azure for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, the TLS version for the storage account is now version 1.2.

8 Mar 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.4 release of the Connector.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.0

BlueXP can now deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.0.

[Learn about the new features included in this release of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Support for the AWS C2S environment

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 in the AWS Commercial Cloud Services (C2S) environment.

[Learn how to get started in C2S.](#)

AWS encryption with customer-managed CMKs

BlueXP has always enabled you to encrypt Cloud Volumes ONTAP data using the AWS Key Management Service (KMS). Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.0, data on EBS disks and data tiered to S3 are encrypted if you select a customer-managed CMK. Previously, only EBS data would be encrypted.

Note that you'll need to provide the Cloud Volumes ONTAP IAM role with access to use the CMK.

[Learn more about setting up the AWS KMS with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

Support for Azure DoD

You can now deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 in the Azure Department of Defense (DoD) Impact Level 6 (IL6).

IP address reduction in Google Cloud

We've reduced the number of IP addresses that are required for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 and later in Google Cloud. By default, one less IP address is required (we unified the intercluster LIF with the node management LIF). You also have the option to skip the creation of the SVM management LIF when using the API, which would reduce the need for an additional IP address.

[Learn more about IP address requirements in Google Cloud.](#)

Shared VPC support in Google Cloud

When you deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in Google Cloud, you can now choose shared VPCs for VPC-1, VPC-2, and VPC-3. Previously, only VPC-0 could be a shared VPC. This change is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 and later.

[Learn more about Google Cloud networking requirements.](#)

4 Jan 2021

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.2 release of the Connector.

AWS Outposts

A few months ago, we announced that Cloud Volumes ONTAP had achieved the Amazon Web Services (AWS) Outposts Ready designation. Today, we're pleased to announce that we've validated BlueXP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP with AWS Outposts.

If you have an AWS Outpost, you can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in that Outpost by selecting the Outpost

VPC in the Working Environment wizard. The experience is the same as any other VPC that resides in AWS. Note that you will need to first deploy a Connector in your AWS Outpost.

There are a few limitations to point out:

- Only single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems are supported at this time
- The EC2 instances that you can use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP are limited to what's available in your Outpost
- Only General Purpose SSDs (gp2) are supported at this time

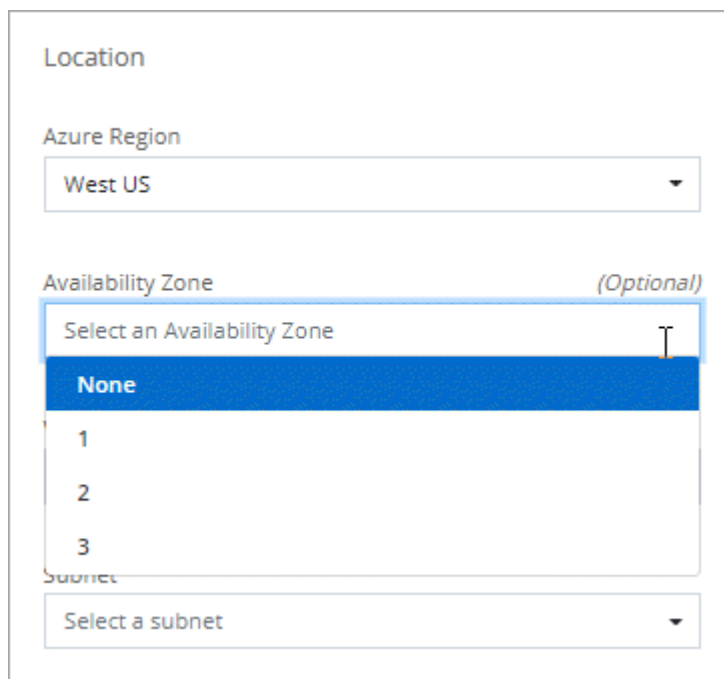
Ultra SSD VNVRAM in supported Azure regions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can now use an Ultra SSD as VNVRAM when you use the E32s_v3 VM type with a single node system [in any supported Azure region](#).

VNVRAM provides better write performance.

Choose an Availability Zone in Azure

You can now choose the Availability Zone in which you'd like to deploy a single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If you don't select an AZ, BlueXP will select one for you.



The screenshot shows a portion of a web-based deployment wizard. At the top, under the heading "Location", there is a dropdown menu for "Azure Region" with "West US" selected. Below this, there is a section for "Availability Zone" with the label "(Optional)". A dropdown menu is open, showing the text "Select an Availability Zone" at the top, followed by a blue bar labeled "None", and then three numbered options: "1", "2", and "3". Below the availability zone section, there is a dropdown menu for "Subnet" with the text "Select a subnet".

Larger disks in Google Cloud

Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports 64 TB disks in GCP.



The maximum system capacity with disks alone remains at 256 TB due to GCP limits.

New machine types in Google Cloud

Cloud Volumes ONTAP now supports the following machine types:

- n2-standard-4 with the Explore license and with BYOL
- n2-standard-8 with the Standard license and with BYOL
- n2-standard-32 with the Premium license and with BYOL

3 Nov 2020

The following changes were introduced with the 3.9.0 release of the Connector.

Azure Private Link for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

By default, BlueXP now enables an Azure Private Link connection between Cloud Volumes ONTAP and its associated storage accounts. A Private Link secures connections between endpoints in Azure.

- [Learn more about Azure Private Links](#)
- [Learn more about using an Azure Private Link with Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

Known limitations

Known limitations identify platforms, devices, or functions that are not supported by this release of the product, or that do not interoperate correctly with it. Review these limitations carefully.

These limitations are specific to Cloud Volumes ONTAP management in BlueXP. To view limitations with the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software itself, [go to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#)

BlueXP doesn't support FlexGroup volumes creation

While Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports FlexGroup volumes, BlueXP does not currently support FlexGroup volume creation. If you create a FlexGroup volume from ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI, then you should set BlueXP's Capacity Management mode to Manual. Automatic mode might not work properly with FlexGroup volumes.



The ability to create FlexGroup volumes in BlueXP is planned for a future release.

BlueXP doesn't support S3 with Cloud Volumes ONTAP

While Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports S3 as an option for scale-out storage, BlueXP doesn't provide any management capabilities for this feature. Using the CLI is the best practice to configure S3 client access from Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For details, refer to the [S3 Configuration Power Guide](#).

[Learn more about Cloud Volumes ONTAP support for S3 and other client protocols.](#)

BlueXP doesn't support disaster recovery for storage VMs

BlueXP doesn't provide any setup or orchestration support for storage VM (SVM) disaster recovery. You must use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

[Learn more about SVM disaster recovery.](#)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes

The Release Notes for Cloud Volumes ONTAP provide release-specific information. What's new in the release, supported configurations, storage limits, and any known limitations or issues that can affect product functionality.

[Go to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#)

Get started

Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP enables you to optimize your cloud storage costs and performance while enhancing data protection, security, and compliance.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is a software-only storage appliance that runs ONTAP data management software in the cloud. It provides enterprise-grade storage with the following key features:

- Storage efficiencies

Leverage built-in data deduplication, data compression, thin provisioning, and cloning to minimize storage costs.

- High availability

Ensure enterprise reliability and continuous operations in case of failures in your cloud environment.

- Data protection

Cloud Volumes ONTAP leverages SnapMirror, NetApp's industry-leading replication technology, to replicate on-premises data to the cloud so it's easy to have secondary copies available for multiple use cases.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP also integrates with BlueXP backup and recovery to deliver backup and restore capabilities for protection, and long-term archive of your cloud data.

[Learn more about BlueXP backup and recovery](#)

- Data tiering

Switch between high and low-performance storage pools on-demand without taking applications offline.

- Application consistency

Ensure consistency of NetApp Snapshot copies using NetApp SnapCenter.

[Learn more about SnapCenter](#)

- Data security

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports data encryption and provides protection against viruses and ransomware.

- Privacy compliance controls

Integration with BlueXP classification helps you understand data context and identify sensitive data.

[Learn more about BlueXP classification](#)



Licenses for ONTAP features are included with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[View supported Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations](#)

Supported ONTAP versions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployments

BlueXP enables you to choose from several different ONTAP versions when you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions other than those listed here are not available for new deployments. For information on upgrade, refer to [Supported upgrade paths](#).

AWS

Single node

- 9.15.1 GA
- 9.15.0 P1
- 9.14.1 GA
- 9.14.1 RC1
- 9.14.0 GA
- 9.13.1 GA
- 9.12.1 GA
- 9.12.1 RC1
- 9.12.0 P1
- 9.11.1 P3
- 9.10.1
- 9.9.1 P6
- 9.8
- 9.7 P5
- 9.5 P6

HA pair

- 9.15.1 GA
- 9.15.0 P1
- 9.14.1 GA
- 9.14.1 RC1
- 9.14.0 GA
- 9.13.1 GA
- 9.12.1 GA
- 9.12.1 RC1
- 9.12.0 P1
- 9.11.1 P3

- 9.10.1
- 9.9.1 P6
- 9.8
- 9.7 P5
- 9.5 P6

Get started in Amazon Web Services

Quick start for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Get started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS in a few steps.

1

Create a Connector

If you don't have a [Connector](#) yet, you need to create one. [Learn how to create a Connector in AWS](#)

Note that if you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in a subnet where no internet access is available, then you need to manually install the Connector and access the BlueXP user interface that's running on that Connector. [Learn how to manually install the Connector in a location without internet access](#)

2

Plan your configuration

BlueXP offers preconfigured packages that match your workload requirements, or you can create your own configuration. If you choose your own configuration, you should understand the options available to you. [Learn more](#).

3

Set up your networking

- Ensure that your VPC and subnets will support connectivity between the Connector and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
- Enable outbound internet access from the target VPC for NetApp AutoSupport.

This step isn't required if you're deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP in a location where no internet access is available.

- Set up a VPC endpoint to the S3 service.

A VPC endpoint is required if you want to tier cold data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to low-cost object storage.

[Learn more about networking requirements.](#)

4

Set up the AWS KMS

If you want to use Amazon encryption with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, then you need to ensure that an active Customer Master Key (CMK) exists. You also need to modify the key policy for each CMK by adding the IAM role that provides permissions to the Connector as a *key user*. [Learn more](#).

5

Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP using BlueXP

Click **Add Working Environment**, select the type of system that you would like to deploy, and complete the steps in the wizard. [Read step-by-step instructions.](#)

Related links

- [Create a Connector in AWS from BlueXP](#)
- [Create a Connector from the AWS Marketplace](#)
- [Install and set up a Connector on premises](#)
- [AWS permissions for the Connector](#)

Plan your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration in AWS

When you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you can choose a preconfigured system that matches your workload requirements, or you can create your own configuration. If you choose your own configuration, you should understand the options available to you.

Choose a Cloud Volumes ONTAP license

Several licensing options are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Each option enables you to choose a consumption model that meets your needs.

- [Learn about licensing options for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)
- [Learn how to set up licensing](#)

Choose a supported region

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is supported in most AWS regions. [View the full list of supported regions.](#)

Newer AWS regions must be enabled before you can create and manage resources in those regions. [AWS documentation: Learn how to enable a region.](#)

Choose a supported Local Zone

Selecting a Local Zone is optional. Cloud Volumes ONTAP is supported in some AWS Local Zones including Singapore. Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS supports only high availability (HA) mode in a single availability zone. Single node deployments are not supported.



Cloud Volumes ONTAP does not have support for data tiering and cloud tiering in AWS Local Zones. Additionally, Local Zones with instances that have not been qualified for Cloud Volumes ONTAP are not supported. An example of this is Miami, that is not available as a Local Zone, because it has only Gen6 instances that are unsupported and unqualified.

[AWS Documentation: View the full list of Local Zones.](#)

Local Zones must be enabled before you can create and manage resources in those zones.

[AWS Documentation: Getting started with AWS Local Zones.](#)

Choose a supported instance

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports several instance types, depending on the license type that you choose.

[Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Understand storage limits

The raw capacity limit for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is tied to the license. Additional limits impact the size of aggregates and volumes. You should be aware of these limits as you plan your configuration.

[Storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Size your system in AWS

Sizing your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system can help you meet requirements for performance and capacity. You should be aware of a few key points when choosing an instance type, disk type, and disk size:

Instance type

- Match your workload requirements to the maximum throughput and IOPS for each EC2 instance type.
- If several users write to the system at the same time, choose an instance type that has enough CPUs to manage the requests.
- If you have an application that is mostly reads, then choose a system with enough RAM.
 - [AWS Documentation: Amazon EC2 Instance Types](#)
 - [AWS Documentation: Amazon EBS-Optimized Instances](#)

EBS disk type

At a high level, the differences between EBS disk types are as follows. To learn more about the use cases for EBS disks, refer to [AWS Documentation: EBS Volume Types](#).

- *General Purpose SSD (gp3)* disks are the lowest-cost SSDs that balance cost and performance for a broad range of workloads. Performance is defined in terms of IOPS and throughput. gp3 disks are supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 and later.

When you select a gp3 disk, BlueXP fills in default IOPS and throughput values that provide performance that is equivalent to a gp2 disk based on the selected disk size. You can increase the values to get better performance at a higher cost, but we do not support lower values because it can result in inferior performance. In short, stick with the default values or increase them. Don't lower them. [AWS Documentation: Learn more about gp3 disks and their performance.](#)

Note that Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature with gp3 disks. [Learn more about Elastic Volumes support.](#)

- *General Purpose SSD (gp2)* disks balance cost and performance for a broad range of workloads. Performance is defined in terms of IOPS.
- *Provisioned IOPS SSD (io1)* disks are for critical applications that require the highest performance at a higher cost.

Note that Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature with io1 disks. [Learn more about Elastic Volumes support.](#)

- *Throughput Optimized HDD (st1)* disks are for frequently accessed workloads that require fast and consistent throughput at a lower price.



Data tiering to AWS S3 is not available in AWS Local Zones due to lack of connectivity.

EBS disk size

If you choose a configuration that doesn't support the [Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature](#), then you need to choose an initial disk size when you launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. After that, you can [let BlueXP manage a system's capacity for you](#), but if you want to [create aggregates yourself](#), be aware of the following:

- All disks in an aggregate must be the same size.
- The performance of EBS disks is tied to disk size. The size determines the baseline IOPS and maximum burst duration for SSD disks and the baseline and burst throughput for HDD disks.
- Ultimately, you should choose the disk size that gives you the *sustained performance* that you need.
- Even if you do choose larger disks (for example, six 4 TiB disks), you might not get all of the IOPS because the EC2 instance can reach its bandwidth limit.

For more details about EBS disk performance, refer to [AWS Documentation: EBS Volume Types](#).

As noted above, choosing a disk size is not supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations that support the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature. [Learn more about Elastic Volumes support](#).

View default system disks

In addition to the storage for user data, BlueXP also purchases cloud storage for Cloud Volumes ONTAP system data (boot data, root data, core data, and NVRAM). For planning purposes, it might help for you to review these details before you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[View the default disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP system data in AWS.](#)



The Connector also requires a system disk. [View details about the Connector's default configuration.](#)

Prepare to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in an AWS Outpost

If you have an AWS Outpost, you can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in that Outpost by selecting the Outpost VPC in the Working Environment wizard. The experience is the same as any other VPC that resides in AWS. Note that you will need to first deploy a Connector in your AWS Outpost.

There are a few limitations to point out:

- Only single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems are supported at this time
- The EC2 instances that you can use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP are limited to what's available in your Outpost
- Only General Purpose SSDs (gp2) are supported at this time

Collect networking information

When you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you need to specify details about your VPC network. You can use a worksheet to collect the information from your administrator.

Single node or HA pair in a single AZ

AWS information	Your value
Region	
VPC	
Subnet	
Security group (if using your own)	

HA pair in multiple AZs

AWS information	Your value
Region	
VPC	
Security group (if using your own)	
Node 1 availability zone	
Node 1 subnet	
Node 2 availability zone	
Node 2 subnet	
Mediator availability zone	
Mediator subnet	
Key pair for the mediator	
Floating IP address for cluster management port	
Floating IP address for data on node 1	
Floating IP address for data on node 2	
Route tables for floating IP addresses	

Choose a write speed

BlueXP enables you to choose a write speed setting for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Before you choose a write speed, you should understand the differences between the normal and high settings and risks and recommendations when using high write speed. [Learn more about write speed.](#)

Choose a volume usage profile

ONTAP includes several storage efficiency features that can reduce the total amount of storage that you need. When you create a volume in BlueXP, you can choose a profile that enables these features or a profile that disables them. You should learn more about these features to help you decide which profile to use.

NetApp storage efficiency features provide the following benefits:

Thin provisioning

Presents more logical storage to hosts or users than you actually have in your physical storage pool. Instead of preallocating storage space, storage space is allocated dynamically to each volume as data is written.

Deduplication

Improves efficiency by locating identical blocks of data and replacing them with references to a single shared block. This technique reduces storage capacity requirements by eliminating redundant blocks of data that reside in the same volume.

Compression

Reduces the physical capacity required to store data by compressing data within a volume on primary, secondary, and archive storage.

Set up your networking

Set up AWS networking for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

BlueXP handles the set up of networking components for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, such as IP addresses, netmasks, and routes. You need to make sure that outbound internet access is available, that enough private IP addresses are available, that the right connections are in place, and more.

General requirements

Ensure that you have fulfilled the following requirements in AWS.

Outbound internet access for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems require outbound internet access for accessing external endpoints for various functions. Cloud Volumes ONTAP can't operate properly if these endpoints are blocked in environments with strict security requirements.

The BlueXP Connector also contacts several endpoints for day-to-day operations, as well as the BlueXP web-based console. For information about the BlueXP endpoints, refer to [View endpoints contacted from the Connector](#) and [Prepare networking for using the BlueXP console](#).

Cloud Volumes ONTAP endpoints

Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses these endpoints to communicate with various services.

Endpoints	Applicable for	Purpose	BlueXP deployment modes	Impact if endpoint is not available
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com	Authentication	Used for BlueXP authentication.	Standard and restricted modes.	User authentication fails and the following services remain unavailable: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cloud Volumes ONTAP services • ONTAP services • Protocols and proxy services
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com/tenancy	Tenancy	Used to retrieve the Cloud Volumes ONTAP resources from BlueXP tenancy to authorize resources and users.	Standard and restricted modes.	Cloud Volumes ONTAP resources and the users are not authorized.
https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup	AutoSupport	Used to send AutoSupport telemetry data to NetApp support.	Standard and restricted modes.	AutoSupport information remains undelivered.
The exact commercial endpoint for AWS service (suffixed with <code>amazonaws.com</code>) depends on the AWS region that you are using. Refer to AWS documentation for details .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CloudFormation • Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) • Identity and Access Management (IAM) • Key Management Service (KMS) • Security Token Service (STS) • Simple Storage Service (S3) 	Communication with AWS services.	Standard and private modes.	Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot communicate with AWS service to perform specific BlueXP operations in AWS.

Endpoints	Applicable for	Purpose	BlueXP deploy ment modes	Impact if endpoint is not available
The exact government endpoint for AWS service depends on the AWS region that you are using. The endpoints are suffixed with <code>amazonaws.com</code> and <code>c2s.ic.gov</code> . Refer to AWS SDK and AWS Documentation for more information.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CloudFormation • Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) • Identity and Access Management (IAM) • Key Management Service (KMS) • Security Token Service (STS) • Simple Storage Service (S3) 	Communication with AWS services.	Restricted mode.	Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot communicate with AWS service to perform specific BlueXP operations in AWS.

Outbound internet access for the HA mediator

The HA mediator instance must have an outbound connection to the AWS EC2 service so it can assist with storage failover. To provide the connection, you can add a public IP address, specify a proxy server, or use a manual option.

The manual option can be a NAT gateway or an interface VPC endpoint from the target subnet to the AWS EC2 service. For details about VPC endpoints, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Interface VPC Endpoints \(AWS PrivateLink\)](#).

Network configurations to support Connector proxy

You can use the proxy servers configured for the BlueXP Connector to enable outbound internet access from Cloud Volumes ONTAP. BlueXP supports two types of proxies:

- **Explicit proxy:** The outbound traffic from Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses the HTTP address of the proxy server specified during the Connector proxy configuration. The Connector administrator might also have configured user credentials and root CA certificates for additional authentication. If a root CA certificate is available for the explicit proxy, make sure to obtain and upload the same certificate to your Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment using the [ONTAP CLI: security certificate install](#) command.
- **Transparent proxy:** The network is configured to automatically route outbound traffic from Cloud Volumes ONTAP through the Connector proxy. When setting up a transparent proxy, the Connector administrator needs to provide only a root CA certificate for connectivity from Cloud Volumes ONTAP, not the HTTP address of the proxy server. Make sure that you obtain and upload the same root CA certificate to your Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment using the [ONTAP CLI: security certificate install](#) command.

For information about configuring proxy servers for the BlueXP Connector, refer to the [Configure a Connector to use a proxy server](#).

Private IP addresses

BlueXP automatically allocates the required number of private IP addresses to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You need to ensure that your networking has enough private IP addresses available.

The number of LIFs that BlueXP allocates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP depends on whether you deploy a single node system or an HA pair. A LIF is an IP address associated with a physical port.

IP addresses for a single node system

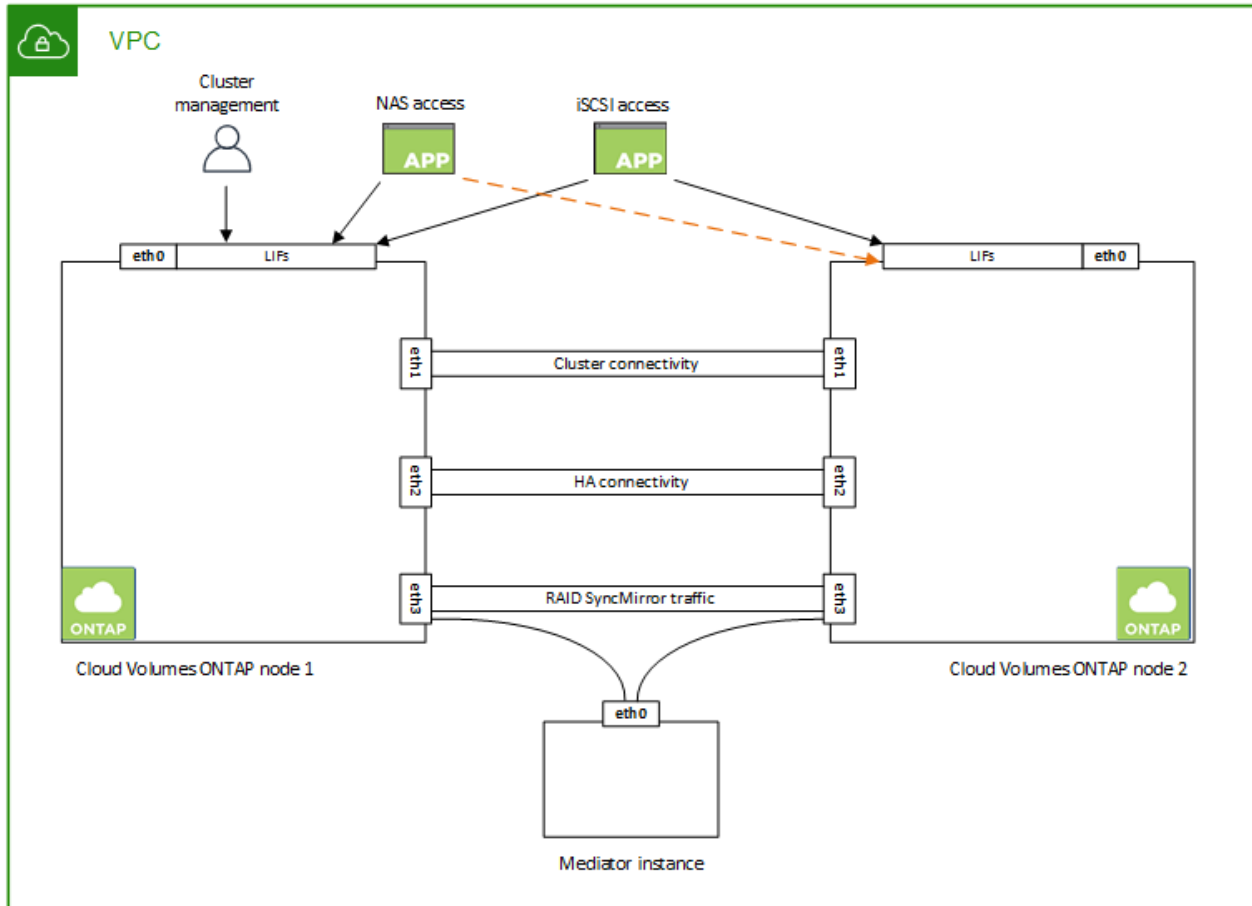
BlueXP allocates 6 IP addresses to a single node system.

The following table provides details about the LIFs that are associated with each private IP address.

LIF	Purpose
Cluster management	Administrative management of the entire cluster (HA pair).
Node management	Administrative management of a node.
Intercluster	Cross-cluster communication, backup, and replication.
NAS data	Client access over NAS protocols.
iSCSI data	Client access over the iSCSI protocol. Also used by the system for other important networking workflows. This LIF is required and should not be deleted.
Storage VM management	A storage VM management LIF is used with management tools like SnapCenter.

IP addresses for HA pairs

HA pairs require more IP addresses than a single node system does. These IP addresses are spread across different ethernet interfaces, as shown in the following image:



The number of private IP addresses required for an HA pair depends on which deployment model you choose. An HA pair deployed in a *single* AWS Availability Zone (AZ) requires 15 private IP addresses, while an HA pair deployed in *multiple* AZs requires 13 private IP addresses.

The following tables provide details about the LIFs that are associated with each private IP address.

Table 1. LIFs for HA pairs in a single AZ

LIF	Interface	Node	Purpose
Cluster management	eth0	node 1	Administrative management of the entire cluster (HA pair).
Node management	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Administrative management of a node.
Intercluster	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Cross-cluster communication, backup, and replication.
NAS data	eth0	node 1	Client access over NAS protocols.
iSCSI data	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Client access over the iSCSI protocol. Also used by the system for other important networking workflows. These LIFs are required and should not be deleted.

LIF	Interface	Node	Purpose
Cluster connectivity	eth1	node 1 and node 2	Enables the nodes to communicate with each other and to move data within the cluster.
HA connectivity	eth2	node 1 and node 2	Communication between the two nodes in case of failover.
RSM iSCSI traffic	eth3	node 1 and node 2	RAID SyncMirror iSCSI traffic, as well as communication between the two Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes and the mediator.
Mediator	eth0	Mediator	A communication channel between the nodes and the mediator to assist in storage takeover and giveback processes.

Table 2. LIFs for HA pairs in multiple AZs

LIF	Interface	Node	Purpose
Node management	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Administrative management of a node.
Intercluster	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Cross-cluster communication, backup, and replication.
iSCSI data	eth0	node 1 and node 2	Client access over the iSCSI protocol. These LIFs also manage the migration of floating IP addresses between nodes. These LIFs are required and should not be deleted.
Cluster connectivity	eth1	node 1 and node 2	Enables the nodes to communicate with each other and to move data within the cluster.
HA connectivity	eth2	node 1 and node 2	Communication between the two nodes in case of failover.
RSM iSCSI traffic	eth3	node 1 and node 2	RAID SyncMirror iSCSI traffic, as well as communication between the two Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes and the mediator.
Mediator	eth0	Mediator	A communication channel between the nodes and the mediator to assist in storage takeover and giveback processes.



When deployed in multiple Availability Zones, several LIFs are associated with [floating IP addresses](#), which don't count against the AWS private IP limit.

Security groups

You don't need to create security groups because BlueXP does that for you. If you need to use your own, refer to [Security group rules](#).



Looking for information about the Connector? [View security group rules for the Connector](#)

Connection for data tiering

If you want to use EBS as a performance tier and AWS S3 as a capacity tier, you must ensure that Cloud Volumes ONTAP has a connection to S3. The best way to provide that connection is by creating a VPC Endpoint to the S3 service. For instructions, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Creating a Gateway Endpoint](#).

When you create the VPC Endpoint, be sure to select the region, VPC, and route table that corresponds to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You must also modify the security group to add an outbound HTTPS rule that enables traffic to the S3 endpoint. Otherwise, Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot connect to the S3 service.

If you experience any issues, refer to the [AWS Support Knowledge Center: Why can't I connect to an S3 bucket using a gateway VPC endpoint?](#)

Connections to ONTAP systems

To replicate data between a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS and ONTAP systems in other networks, you must have a VPN connection between the AWS VPC and the other network—for example, your corporate network. For instructions, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Setting Up an AWS VPN Connection](#).

DNS and Active Directory for CIFS

If you want to provision CIFS storage, you must set up DNS and Active Directory in AWS or extend your on-premises setup to AWS.

The DNS server must provide name resolution services for the Active Directory environment. You can configure DHCP option sets to use the default EC2 DNS server, which must not be the DNS server used by the Active Directory environment.

For instructions, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Active Directory Domain Services on the AWS Cloud: Quick Start Reference Deployment](#).

VPC sharing

Starting with the 9.11.1 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs are supported in AWS with VPC sharing. VPC sharing enables your organization to share subnets with other AWS accounts. To use this configuration, you must set up your AWS environment and then deploy the HA pair using the API.

[Learn how to deploy an HA pair in a shared subnet.](#)

Requirements for HA pairs in multiple AZs

Additional AWS networking requirements apply to Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations that use multiple Availability Zones (AZs). You should review these requirements before you launch an HA pair because you must enter the networking details in BlueXP when you create the working environment.

To understand how HA pairs work, refer to [High-availability pairs](#).

Availability Zones

This HA deployment model uses multiple AZs to ensure high availability of your data. You should use a dedicated AZ for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and the mediator instance, which provides a communication channel between the HA pair.

A subnet should be available in each Availability Zone.

Floating IP addresses for NAS data and cluster/SVM management

HA configurations in multiple AZs use floating IP addresses that migrate between nodes if failures occur. They are not natively accessible from outside the VPC, unless you [set up an AWS transit gateway](#).

One floating IP address is for cluster management, one is for NFS/CIFS data on node 1, and one is for NFS/CIFS data on node 2. A fourth floating IP address for SVM management is optional.



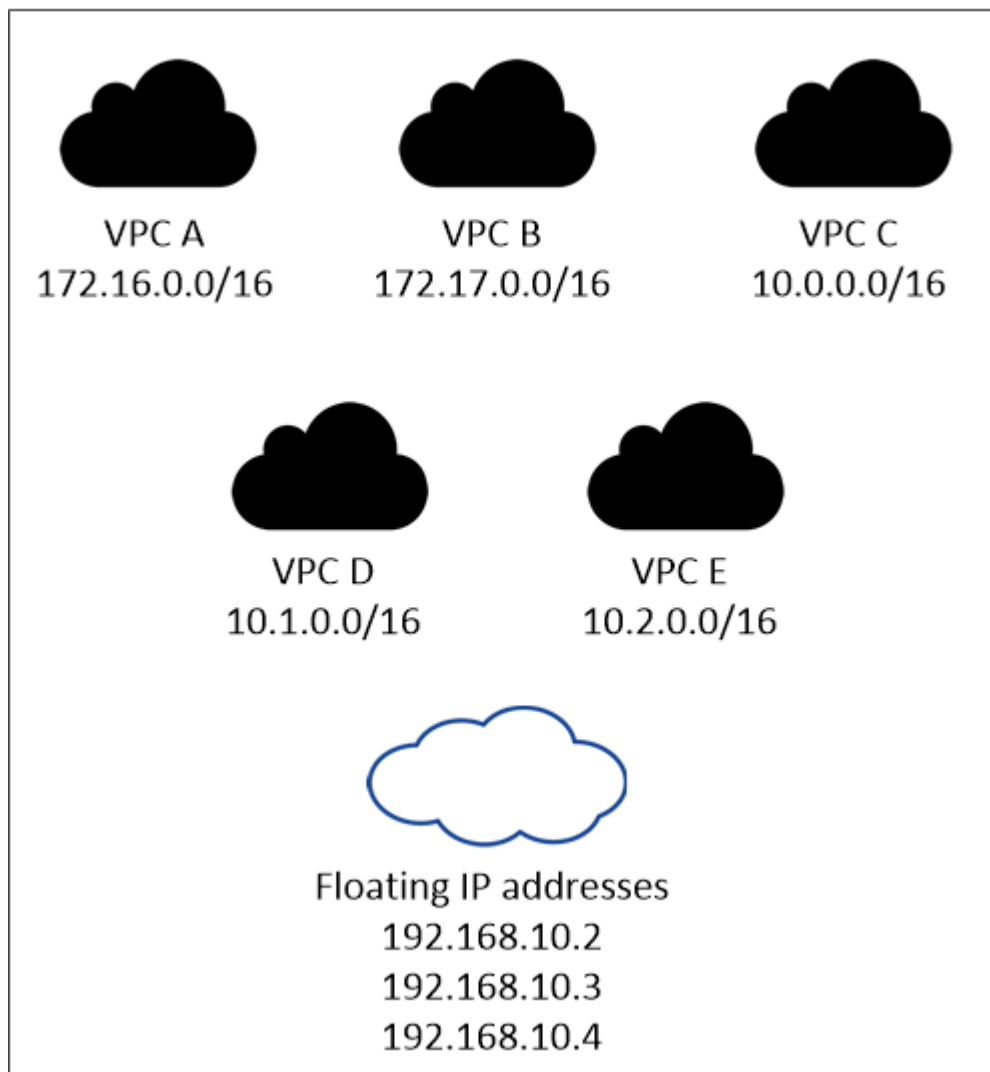
A floating IP address is required for the SVM management LIF if you use SnapDrive for Windows or SnapCenter with the HA pair.

You need to enter the floating IP addresses in BlueXP when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA working environment. BlueXP allocates the IP addresses to the HA pair when it launches the system.

The floating IP addresses must be outside of the CIDR blocks for all VPCs in the AWS region in which you deploy the HA configuration. Think of the floating IP addresses as a logical subnet that's outside of the VPCs in your region.

The following example shows the relationship between floating IP addresses and the VPCs in an AWS region. While the floating IP addresses are outside the CIDR blocks for all VPCs, they're routable to subnets through route tables.

AWS region





BlueXP automatically creates static IP addresses for iSCSI access and for NAS access from clients outside the VPC. You don't need to meet any requirements for these types of IP addresses.

Transit gateway to enable floating IP access from outside the VPC

If needed, [set up an AWS transit gateway](#) to enable access to an HA pair's floating IP addresses from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides.

Route tables

After you specify the floating IP addresses in BlueXP, you are then prompted to select the route tables that should include routes to the floating IP addresses. This enables client access to the HA pair.

If you have just one route table for the subnets in your VPC (the main route table), then BlueXP automatically adds the floating IP addresses to that route table. If you have more than one route table, it's very important to select the correct route tables when launching the HA pair. Otherwise, some clients might not have access to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For example, you might have two subnets that are associated with different route tables. If you select route table A, but not route table B, then clients in the subnet associated with route table A can access the HA pair, but clients in the subnet associated with route table B can't.

For more information about route tables, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Route Tables](#).

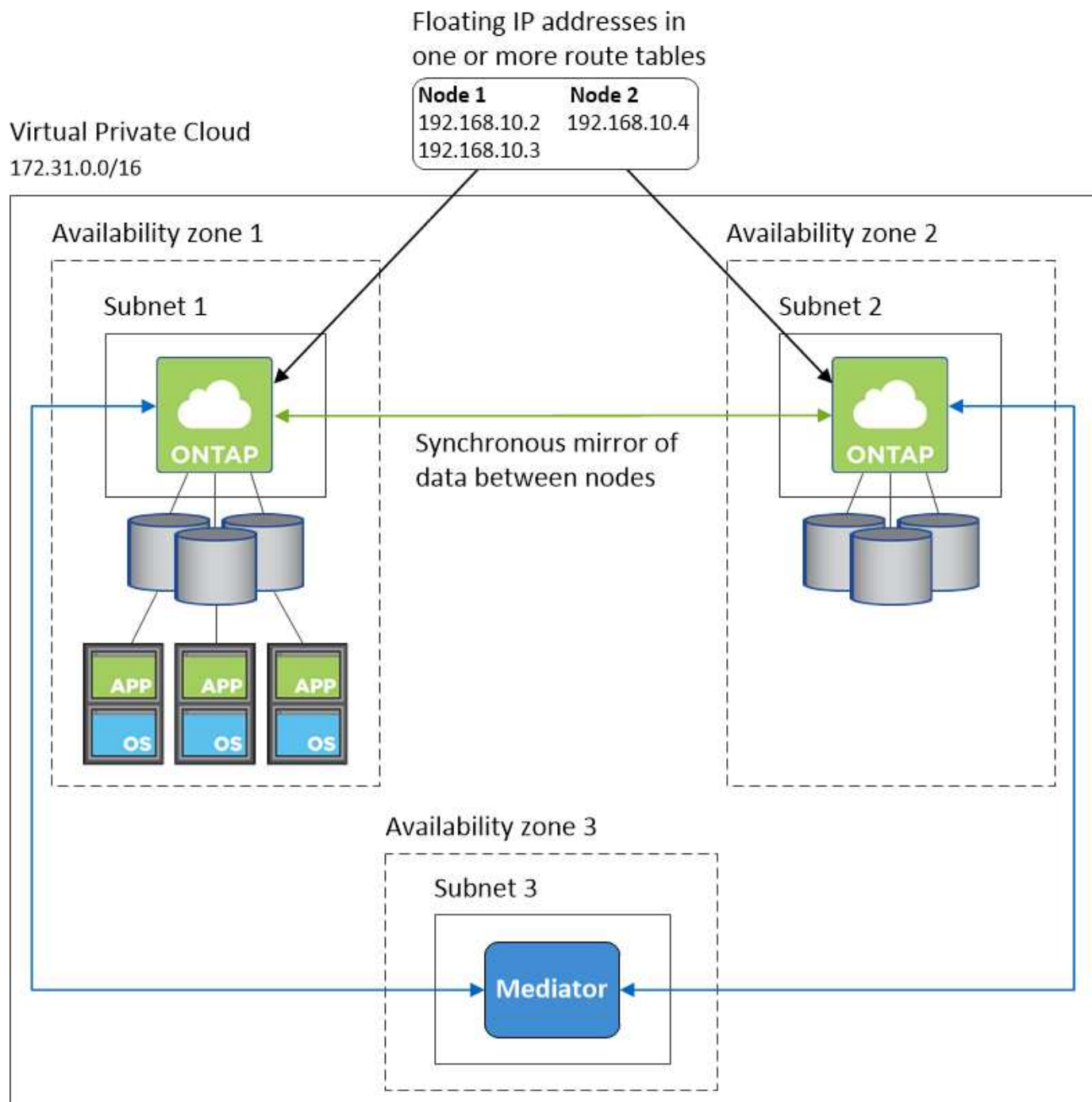
Connection to NetApp management tools

To use NetApp management tools with HA configurations that are in multiple AZs, you have two connection options:

1. Deploy the NetApp management tools in a different VPC and [set up an AWS transit gateway](#). The gateway enables access to the floating IP address for the cluster management interface from outside the VPC.
2. Deploy the NetApp management tools in the same VPC with a similar routing configuration as NAS clients.

Example HA configuration

The following image illustrates the networking components specific to an HA pair in multiple AZs: three Availability Zones, three subnets, floating IP addresses, and a route table.



Requirements for the Connector

If you haven't created a Connector yet, you should review networking requirements for the Connector as well.

- [View networking requirements for the Connector](#)
- [Security group rules in AWS](#)

Related topics

- [Verify AutoSupport setup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)
- [Learn about ONTAP internal ports.](#)

Set up an AWS transit gateway for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs

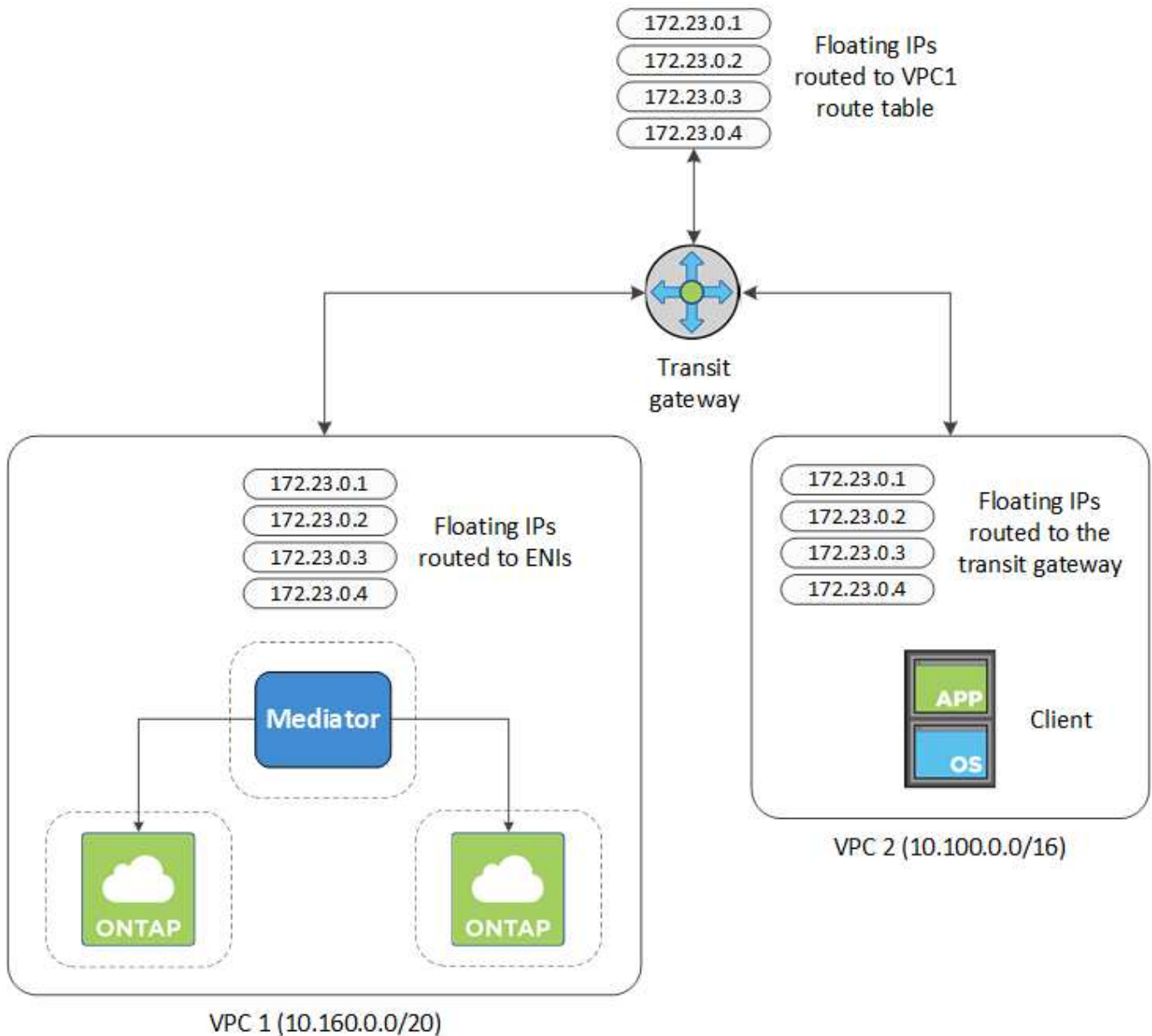
Set up an AWS transit gateway to enable access to an HA pair's [floating IP addresses](#) from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides.

When a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration is spread across multiple AWS Availability Zones, floating IP addresses are required for NAS data access from within the VPC. These floating IP addresses can migrate between nodes when failures occur, but they are not natively accessible from outside the VPC. Separate private IP addresses provide data access from outside the VPC, but they don't provide automatic failover.

Floating IP addresses are also required for the cluster management interface and the optional SVM management LIF.

If you set up an AWS transit gateway, you enable access to the floating IP addresses from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides. That means NAS clients and NetApp management tools outside the VPC can access the floating IPs.

Here's an example that shows two VPCs connected by a transit gateway. An HA system resides in one VPC, while a client resides in the other. You could then mount a NAS volume on the client using the floating IP address.



The following steps illustrate how to set up a similar configuration.

Steps

1. [Create a transit gateway and attach the VPCs to the gateway.](#)
2. Associate the VPCs with the transit gateway route table.
 - a. In the **VPC** service, click **Transit Gateway Route Tables**.
 - b. Select the route table.
 - c. Click **Associations** and then select **Create association**.
 - d. Choose the attachments (the VPCs) to associate and then click **Create association**.
3. Create routes in the transit gateway's route table by specifying the HA pair's floating IP addresses.

You can find the floating IP addresses on the Working Environment Information page in BlueXP. Here's an example:

NFS & CIFS access from within the VPC using Floating IP

Auto failover

Cluster Management : 172.23.0.1

Data (nfs,cifs) : Node 1: 172.23.0.2 | Node 2: 172.23.0.3

Access

SVM Management : 172.23.0.4

The following sample image shows the route table for the transit gateway. It includes routes to the CIDR blocks of the two VPCs and four floating IP addresses used by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Transit Gateway Route Table: tgw-rtb-0ea8ee291c7aedd3

Details Associations Propagations **Routes** Tags

The table below will return a maximum of 1000 routes. Narrow the filter or use export routes to view more routes.

Create route Replace route Delete route

Filter by attributes or search by keyword

<input type="checkbox"/>	CIDR	Attachment	Resource type	Route type	Route state
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.100.0.0/16	tgw-attach-05e77bd34e2ff91f8 vpc-0b2bc30e0dc8e0db1	VPC2	propagated	active
<input type="checkbox"/>	10.160.0.0/20	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603	VPC1	propagated	active
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.23.0.1/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603	VPC	static	active
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.23.0.2/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603	VPC	static	active
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.23.0.3/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603	VPC	static	active
<input type="checkbox"/>	172.23.0.4/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603	VPC	static	active

Floating IP Addresses

4. Modify the route table of VPCs that need to access the floating IP addresses.
 - a. Add route entries to the floating IP addresses.
 - b. Add a route entry to the CIDR block of the VPC where the HA pair resides.

The following sample image shows the route table for VPC 2, which includes routes to VPC 1 and the floating IP addresses.

Route Table: rtb-0569a1bd740ed033f

Summary Routes Subnet Associations Route Propagation Tags

Edit routes

View All routes

Destination	Target	Status	Propagated
10.100.0.0/16	local	active	No
0.0.0.0/0	igw-07250bd01781e67df	active	No
10.160.0.0/20	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No
172.23.0.1/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No
172.23.0.2/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No
172.23.0.3/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No
172.23.0.4/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No

VPC1

Floating IP Addresses

- Modify the route table for the HA pair's VPC by adding a route to the VPC that needs access to the floating IP addresses.

This step is important because it completes the routing between the VPCs.

The following sample image shows the route table for VPC 1. It includes a route to the floating IP addresses and to VPC 2, which is where a client resides. BlueXP automatically added the floating IPs to the route table when it deployed the HA pair.

Summary Routes Subnet Associations Route Propagation Tags

Edit routes

View All routes

Destination	Target	Status
10.160.0.0/20	local	active
pl-68a54001 (com.amazonaws.us-west-2.s3, 54.231.160.0/19, 52.218.128.0/17, 52.92.32.0/22)	vpce-cb51a0a2	active
0.0.0.0/0	igw-b2182dd7	active
10.60.29.0/25	pcx-589c3331	active
10.100.0.0/16	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active
10.129.0.0/20	pcx-ff7e1396	active
172.23.0.1/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	active
172.23.0.2/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	active
172.23.0.3/32	eni-0f76681216c3108ed	active
172.23.0.4/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	active

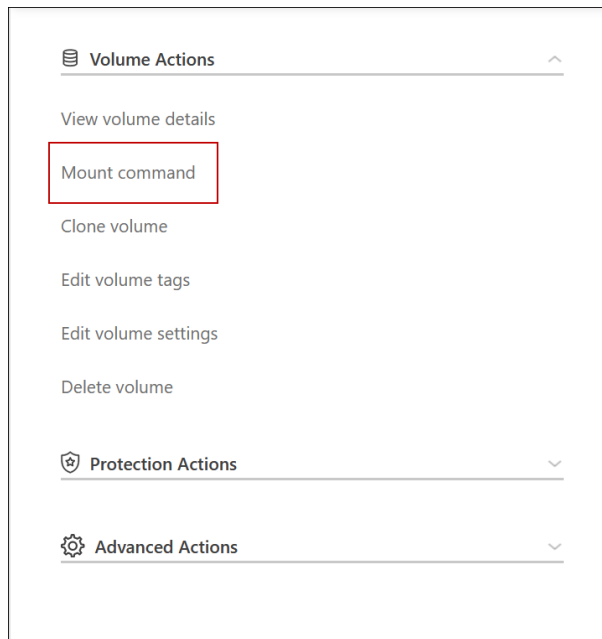
VPC2

Floating act IP Addresses

- Update the security groups settings to All traffic for the VPC.
 - Under Virtual Private Cloud, click **Subnets**.
 - Click the **Route table** tab, select the desired environment for one of the floating IP addresses for an HA pair.
 - Click **Security groups**.
 - Select **Edit Inbound Rules**.
 - Click **Add rule**.
 - Under Type, select **All traffic**, and then select the VPC IP address.
 - Click **Save Rules** to apply the changes.
- Mount volumes to clients using the floating IP address.

You can find the correct IP address in BlueXP through the **Mount Command** option under the Manage

Volumes panel in BlueXP.



8. If you're mounting an NFS volume, configure the export policy to match the subnet of the client VPC.

[Learn how to edit a volume.](#)

Related links

- [High-availability pairs in AWS](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in an AWS shared subnet

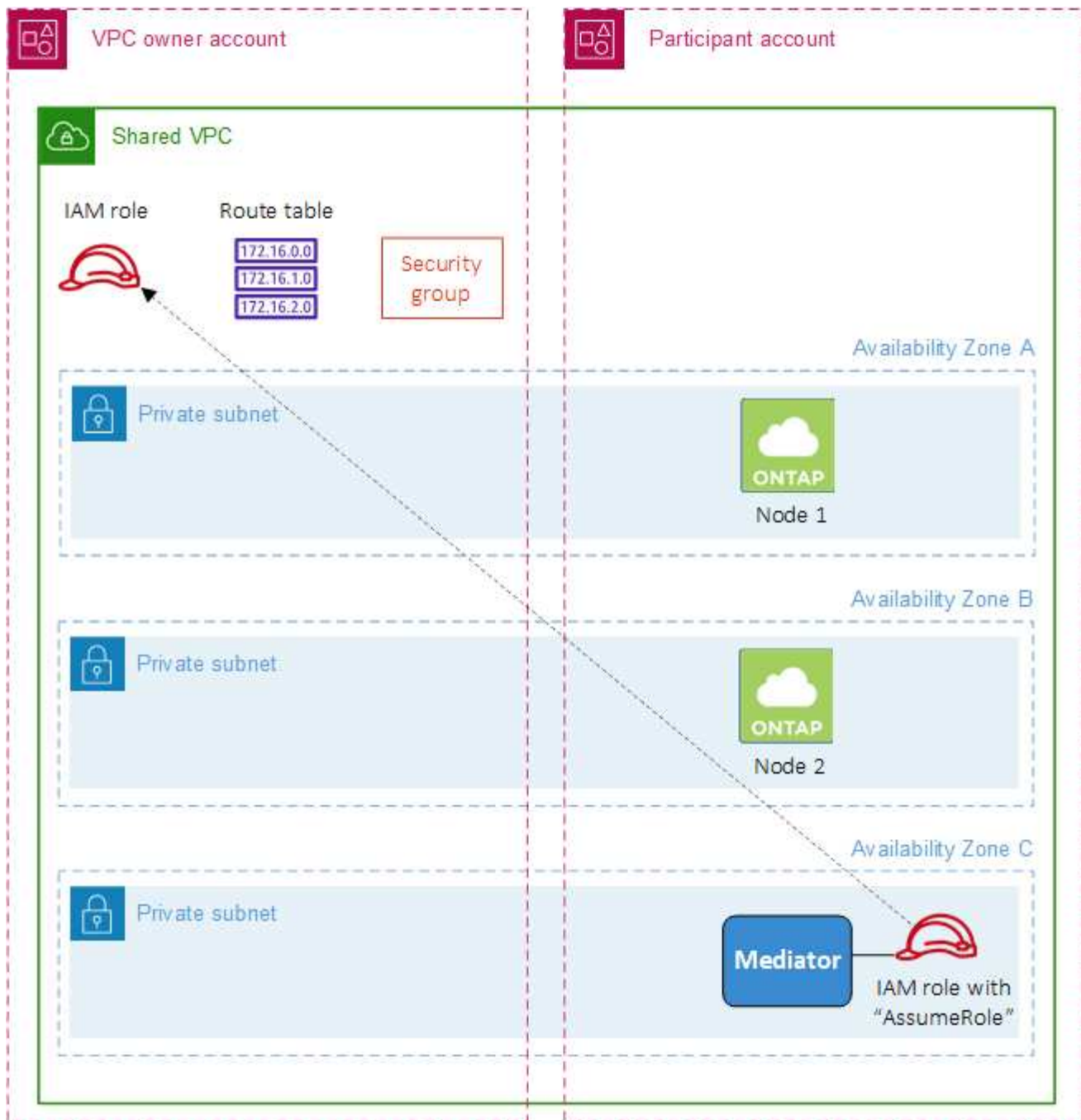
Starting with the 9.11.1 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs are supported in AWS with VPC sharing. VPC sharing enables your organization to share subnets with other AWS accounts. To use this configuration, you must set up your AWS environment and then deploy the HA pair using the API.

With [VPC sharing](#), a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration is spread across two accounts:

- The VPC owner account, which owns the networking (the VPC, subnets, route tables, and Cloud Volumes ONTAP security group)
- The participant account, where the EC2 instances are deployed in shared subnets (this includes the two HA nodes and the mediator)

In the case of a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration that is deployed across multiple Availability Zones, the HA mediator needs specific permissions to write to the route tables in the VPC owner account. You need to provide those permissions by setting up an IAM role that the mediator can assume.

The following image shows the components involved this deployment:



As described in the steps below, you'll need to share the subnets with the participant account, and then create the IAM role and security group in the VPC owner account.

When you create the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, BlueXP automatically creates and attaches an IAM role to the mediator. This role assumes the IAM role that you created in the VPC owner account in order to make changes to the route tables associated with the HA pair.

Steps

1. Share the subnets in the VPC owner account with the participant account.

This step is required to deploy the HA pair in shared subnets.

[AWS documentation: Share a subnet](#)

2. In the VPC owner account, create a security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[Refer to the security group rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#). Note that you don't need to create a security group for the HA mediator. BlueXP does that for you.

3. In the VPC owner account, create an IAM role that includes the following permissions:

```
Action": [
    "ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses",
    "ec2:CreateRoute",
    "ec2>DeleteRoute",
    "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
    "ec2:DescribeRouteTables",
    "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
    "ec2:ReplaceRoute",
    "ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses"
```

4. Use the BlueXP API to create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

Note that you must specify the following fields:

- "securityGroupId"

The "securityGroupId" field should specify the security group that you created in the VPC owner account (see step 2 above).

- "assumeRoleArn" in the "haParams" object

The "assumeRoleArn" field should include the ARN of the IAM role that you created in the VPC owner account (see step 3 above).

For example:

```
"haParams": {
  "assumeRoleArn":
    "arn:aws:iam::642991768967:role/mediator_role_assume_fromdev"
}
```

[Learn about the Cloud Volumes ONTAP API](#)

Configure placement group creation for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in AWS single AZs

Cloud Volumes ONTAP high-availability (HA) deployments in AWS single availability Zone (AZ) can fail and roll back if the creation of the placement group fails. Creation of the placement group also fails and the deployment rolls back if the Cloud Volumes ONTAP node and mediator instance are not available. To avoid this, you can modify the configuration to allow the deployment to finish even if the placement group creation fails.

On bypassing the rollback process, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployment process completes successfully, and notifies you that the placement group creation is incomplete.

Steps

1. Use SSH to connect to the Connector host and log in.
2. Navigate to `/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/docker_occm/data`.
3. Edit `app.conf` by changing the value of the `rollback-on-placement-group-failure` parameter to `false`. The default value of this parameter is `true`.

```
{
  "occm" : {
    "aws" : {
      "rollback-on-placement-group-failure" : false
    }
  }
}
```

4. Save the file and log off the Connector. You don't need to restart the Connector.

AWS security group inbound and outbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

BlueXP creates AWS security groups that include the inbound and outbound rules that Cloud Volumes ONTAP needs to operate successfully. You might want to refer to the ports for testing purposes or if you prefer to use your own security groups.

Rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules

When you create a working environment and choose a predefined security group, you can choose to allow traffic within one of the following:

- **Selected VPC only:** the source for inbound traffic is the subnet range of the VPC for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the subnet range of the VPC where the Connector resides. This is the recommended option.
- **All VPCs:** the source for inbound traffic is the 0.0.0.0/0 IP range.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	Pinging the instance
HTTP	80	HTTP access to the ONTAP System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
HTTPS	443	Connectivity with the Connector and HTTPS access to the ONTAP System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF

Protocol	Port	Purpose
SSH	22	SSH access to the IP address of the cluster management LIF or a node management LIF
TCP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS
TCP	139	NetBIOS service session for CIFS
TCP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
TCP	445	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
TCP	635	NFS mount
TCP	749	Kerberos
TCP	2049	NFS server daemon
TCP	3260	iSCSI access through the iSCSI data LIF
TCP	4045	NFS lock daemon
TCP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
TCP	10000	Backup using NDMP
TCP	11104	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
TCP	11105	SnapMirror data transfer using intercluster LIFs
UDP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS
UDP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
UDP	635	NFS mount
UDP	2049	NFS server daemon
UDP	4045	NFS lock daemon
UDP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
UDP	4049	NFS rquotad protocol

Outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	All outbound traffic
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The source is the interface (IP address) on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	TCP	88	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set Password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	TCP	88	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS, iSCSI)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
AutoSupport	HTTPS	443	Node management LIF	support.netapp.com	AutoSupport (HTTPS is the default)
	HTTP	80	Node management LIF	support.netapp.com	AutoSupport (only if the transport protocol is changed from HTTPS to HTTP)
	TCP	3128	Node management LIF	Connector	Sending AutoSupport messages through a proxy server on the Connector, if an outbound internet connection isn't available
Backup to S3	TCP	5010	Intercluster LIF	Backup endpoint or restore endpoint	Back up and restore operations for the Backup to S3 feature
Cluster	All traffic	All traffic	All LIFs on one node	All LIFs on the other node	Intercluster communications (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	TCP	3000	Node management LIF	HA mediator	ZAPI calls (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	ICMP	1	Node management LIF	HA mediator	Keep alive (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
Configuration backups	HTTP	80	Node management LIF	http://<connector-IP-address>/occm/offbo xconfig	Send configuration backups to the Connector. ONTAP documentation
DHCP	UDP	68	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP client for first-time setup
DHCPs	UDP	67	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP server
DNS	UDP	53	Node management LIF and data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	DNS	DNS
NDMP	TCP	1860 0–18 699	Node management LIF	Destination servers	NDMP copy
SMTP	TCP	25	Node management LIF	Mail server	SMTP alerts, can be used for AutoSupport
SNMP	TCP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	TCP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
SnapMirror	TCP	11104	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
	TCP	11105	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	SnapMirror data transfer
Syslog	UDP	514	Node management LIF	Syslog server	Syslog forward messages

Rules for the HA mediator external security group

The predefined external security group for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA mediator includes the following inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules

The predefined security group for the HA mediator includes the following inbound rule.

Protocol	Port	Source	Purpose
TCP	3000	CIDR of the Connector	RESTful API access from the Connector

Outbound rules

The predefined security group for the HA mediator opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for the HA mediator includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by the HA mediator.

Protocol	Port	Destination	Purpose
HTTP	80	IP address of the Connector on AWS EC2 instance	Download upgrades for the mediator
HTTPS	443	ec2.amazonaws.com	Assist with storage failover
UDP	53	ec2.amazonaws.com	Assist with storage failover



Rather than open ports 443 and 53, you can create an interface VPC endpoint from the target subnet to the AWS EC2 service.

Rules for the HA configuration internal security group

The predefined internal security group for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration includes the following rules. This security group enables communication between the HA nodes and between the mediator and the nodes.

BlueXP always creates this security group. You do not have the option to use your own.

Inbound rules

The predefined security group includes the following inbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All traffic	All	Communication between the HA mediator and HA nodes

Outbound rules

The predefined security group includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All traffic	All	Communication between the HA mediator and HA nodes

Rules for the Connector

[View security group rules for the Connector](#)

Set up Cloud Volumes ONTAP to use a customer-managed key in AWS

If you want to use Amazon encryption with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, then you need to set up the AWS Key Management Service (KMS).

Steps

1. Ensure that an active Customer Master Key (CMK) exists.

The CMK can be an AWS-managed CMK or a customer-managed CMK. It can be in the same AWS account as BlueXP and Cloud Volumes ONTAP or in a different AWS account.

[AWS Documentation: Customer Master Keys \(CMKs\)](#)

2. Modify the key policy for each CMK by adding the IAM role that provides permissions to BlueXP as a *key user*.

Adding the IAM role as a key user gives BlueXP permissions to use the CMK with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[AWS Documentation: Editing Keys](#)

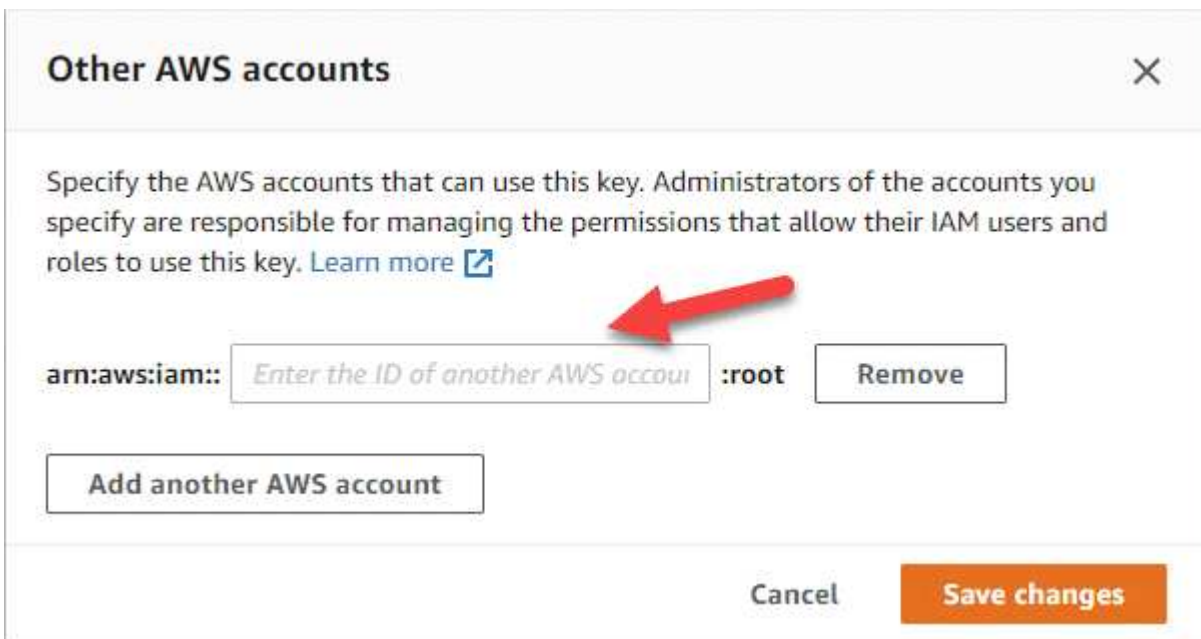
3. If the CMK is in a different AWS account, complete the following steps:

- a. Go to the KMS console from the account where the CMK resides.
- b. Select the key.
- c. In the **General configuration** pane, copy the ARN of the key.

You'll need to provide the ARN to BlueXP when you create the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

- d. In the **Other AWS accounts** pane, add the AWS account that provides BlueXP with permissions.

In most cases, this is the account where BlueXP resides. If BlueXP wasn't installed in AWS, it would be the account for which you provided AWS access keys to BlueXP.



- e. Now switch to the AWS account that provides BlueXP with permissions and open the IAM console.
- f. Create an IAM policy that includes the permissions listed below.
- g. Attach the policy to the IAM role or IAM user that provides permissions to BlueXP.

The following policy provides the permissions that BlueXP needs to use the CMK from the external AWS account. Be sure to modify the region and account ID in the "Resource" sections.

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "AllowUseOfTheKey",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "kms:Encrypt",
        "kms:Decrypt",
        "kms:ReEncrypt*",
        "kms:GenerateDataKey*",
        "kms:DescribeKey"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:externalaccountid:key/externalkeyid"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Sid": "AllowAttachmentOfPersistentResources",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "kms:CreateGrant",
        "kms:ListGrants",
        "kms:RevokeGrant"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:externalaccountid:key/externalaccountid"
      ],
      "Condition": {
        "Bool": {
          "kms:GrantIsForAWSResource": true
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}

```

For additional details about this process, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Allowing users in other accounts to use a KMS key](#).

4. If you are using a customer-managed CMK, modify the key policy for the CMK by adding the Cloud Volumes ONTAP IAM role as a *key user*.

This step is required if you enabled data tiering on Cloud Volumes ONTAP and want to encrypt the data

stored in the S3 bucket.

You'll need to perform this step *after* you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP because the IAM role is created when you create a working environment. (Of course, you do have the option to use an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP IAM role, so it's possible to perform this step before.)

[AWS Documentation: Editing Keys](#)

Set up AWS IAM roles for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes

IAM roles with the required permissions must be attached to each Cloud Volumes ONTAP node. The same is true for the HA mediator. It's easiest to let BlueXP create the IAM roles for you, but you can use your own roles.

This task is optional. When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, the default option is to let BlueXP create the IAM roles for you. If your business's security policies require you to create the IAM roles yourself, then follow the steps below.



Providing your own IAM role is required in AWS Secret Cloud. [Learn how to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in C2S.](#)

Steps

1. Go to the AWS IAM console.
2. Create IAM policies that include the following permissions:
 - Base policy for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes

Standard regions

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3:DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }
]
```

GovCloud (US) regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws-us-gov:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-us-gov:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3:DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-us-gov:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }]
}

```

Top Secret regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3:DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }]
}

```

Secret regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3>DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }]
}

```

- Backup policy for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes

If you plan to use BlueXP backup and recovery with your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, the IAM role for the nodes must include the second policy shown below.

Standard regions

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::netapp-backup*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:DeleteObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:PutObjectTagging",
        "s3:GetObjectTagging",
        "s3:RestoreObject",
        "s3:GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:GetObjectRetention",
        "s3:PutBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:PutObjectRetention"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::netapp-backup*/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

GovCloud (US) regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-us-gov:s3:::netapp-backup*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:DeleteObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:PutObjectTagging",
        "s3:GetObjectTagging",
        "s3:RestoreObject",
        "s3:GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:GetObjectRetention",
        "s3:PutBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:PutObjectRetention"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-us-gov:s3:::netapp-backup*/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}

```

Top Secret regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::netapp-backup*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:DeleteObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:PutObjectTagging",
        "s3:GetObjectTagging",
        "s3:RestoreObject",
        "s3:GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:GetObjectRetention",
        "s3:PutBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:PutObjectRetention"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::netapp-backup*/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}

```

Secret regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::netapp-backup*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:DeleteObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:PutObjectTagging",
        "s3:GetObjectTagging",
        "s3:RestoreObject",
        "s3:GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:GetObjectRetention",
        "s3:PutBucketObjectLockConfiguration",
        "s3:PutObjectRetention"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::netapp-backup*/**",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}

```

- HA mediator


```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses",
      "ec2:CreateRoute",
      "ec2>DeleteRoute",
      "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
      "ec2:DescribeRouteTables",
      "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
      "ec2:ReplaceRoute",
      "ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses",
      "sts:AssumeRole",
      "ec2:DescribeSubnets"
    ],
    "Resource": "*"
  }]
}

```

3. Create an IAM role and attach the policies that you created to the role.

Result

You now have IAM roles that you can select when you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

More information

- [AWS documentation: Creating IAM policies](#)
- [AWS documentation: Creating IAM roles](#)

Set up licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

After you decide which licensing option you want to use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, a few steps are required before you can choose that licensing option when creating a new working environment.

Freemium

Select the Freemium offering to use Cloud Volumes ONTAP free of charge with up to 500 GiB of provisioned capacity. [Learn more about the Freemium offering.](#)

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the steps in BlueXP.
 - a. On the **Details and Credentials** page, click **Edit Credentials > Add Subscription** and then follow the

prompts to subscribe to the pay-as-you-go offering in the AWS Marketplace.

You won't be charged through the marketplace subscription unless you exceed 500 GiB of provisioned capacity, at which time the system is automatically converted to the [Essentials package](#).

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Credentials & Add Subscription' page. At the top, there's a title 'Edit Credentials & Add Subscription'. Below it, a paragraph says: 'Select a subscription option and click **Continue**. The AWS Marketplace enables you to view pricing details and then subscribe.' There are two radio button options: 'Pay-Per-TiB - Annual Contract' (described as 'Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP with an annual, upfront payment.') and 'Pay-as-you-go' (described as 'Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate.'). The 'Pay-as-you-go' option is selected. Below these options, a section titled 'The next steps:' lists two steps: 1. 'AWS Marketplace' with the instruction 'Subscribe and then click **Set Up Your Account** to configure your account.' and 2. 'Cloud Manager' with the instruction 'Save your subscription and associate the Marketplace subscription with your AWS credentials.' At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Continue' (blue) and 'Cancel' (gray).

b. After you return to BlueXP, select **Freemium** when you reach the charging methods page.

The screenshot shows the 'Select Charging Method' page. It features a list of four options, each with a radio button, a label, a pricing model button, and a dropdown arrow. The options are: 'Professional' (By capacity), 'Essential' (By capacity), 'Freemium (Up to 500 GiB)' (By capacity, selected with a blue checkmark), and 'Per Node' (By node). The 'By capacity' buttons are blue, and the 'By node' button is purple.

[View step-by-step instructions to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.](#)

Capacity-based license

Capacity-based licensing enables you to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP per TiB of capacity. Capacity-based licensing is available in the form of a *package*: the Essentials package or the Professional package.

The Essentials and Professional packages are available with the following consumption models:

- A license (bring your own license (BYOL)) purchased from NetApp
- An hourly, pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription from the AWS Marketplace
- An annual contract from the AWS Marketplace

[Learn more about capacity-based licensing.](#)

The following sections describe how to get started with each of these consumption models.

BYOL

Pay upfront by purchasing a license (BYOL) from NetApp to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in any cloud provider.

NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

Steps

1. [Contact NetApp Sales to obtain a license](#)
2. [Add your NetApp Support Site account to BlueXP](#)

BlueXP automatically queries NetApp's licensing service to obtain details about the licenses associated with your NetApp Support Site account. If there are no errors, BlueXP automatically adds the licenses to the digital wallet.

Your license must be available from the BlueXP digital wallet before you can use it with Cloud Volumes ONTAP. If needed, you can [manually add the license to the BlueXP digital wallet](#).

3. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the steps in BlueXP.
 - a. On the **Details and Credentials** page, click **Edit Credentials > Add Subscription** and then follow the prompts to subscribe to the pay-as-you-go offering in the AWS Marketplace.

The license that you purchased from NetApp is always charged first, but you'll be charged from the hourly rate in the marketplace if you exceed your licensed capacity or if the term of your license expires.

Edit Credentials & Add Subscription

Select a subscription option and click **Continue**. The AWS Marketplace enables you to view pricing details and then subscribe.

☐ **Pay-Per-TiB - Annual Contract**
Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP with an annual, upfront payment.

☒ **Pay-as-you-go**
Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate.

The next steps:

- 1 AWS Marketplace**
Subscribe and then click **Set Up Your Account** to configure your account.
- 2 Cloud Manager**
Save your subscription and associate the Marketplace subscription with your AWS credentials.

Continue **Cancel**

- b. After you return to BlueXP, select a capacity-based package when you reach the charging methods page.

Select Charging Method

<input checked="" type="radio"/> Professional	By capacity	▼
<input type="radio"/> Essential	By capacity	▼
<input type="radio"/> Freemium (Up to 500 GiB)	By capacity	▼
<input type="radio"/> Per Node	By node	▼

[View step-by-step instructions to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.](#)

PAYGO subscription

Pay hourly by subscribing to the offer from your cloud provider's marketplace.

When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, BlueXP prompts you to subscribe to the agreement that's available in the AWS Marketplace. That subscription is then associated with the working environment for charging. You can use that same subscription for additional working environments.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the steps in BlueXP.
 - a. On the **Details and Credentials** page, click **Edit Credentials > Add Subscription** and then follow the prompts to subscribe to the pay-as-you-go offering in the AWS Marketplace.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Credentials & Add Subscription". Below the title, there is a horizontal line and a paragraph: "Select a subscription option and click **Continue**. The AWS Marketplace enables you to view pricing details and then subscribe." Below this, there are two selectable options, each in a light gray box. The first option is "Pay-Per-TiB - Annual Contract" with an unselected radio button; its description is "Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP with an annual, upfront payment." The second option is "Pay-as-you-go" with a selected radio button; its description is "Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate." Below these options is another horizontal line and the text "The next steps:". This is followed by a numbered list of two steps: "1 AWS Marketplace" with the instruction "Subscribe and then click **Set Up Your Account** to configure your account." and "2 Cloud Manager" with the instruction "Save your subscription and associate the Marketplace subscription with your AWS credentials." At the bottom right of the dialog box are two buttons: a blue "Continue" button and a gray "Cancel" button.

- b. After you return to BlueXP, select a capacity-based package when you reach the charging methods page.

Select Charging Method

☒ Professional

By capacity

▼

☐ Essential

By capacity

▼

☐ Freemium (Up to 500 GiB)

By capacity

▼

☐ Per Node

By node

▼

[View step-by-step instructions to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.](#)



You can manage the AWS Marketplace subscriptions associated with your AWS accounts from the Settings > Credentials page. [Learn how to manage your AWS accounts and subscriptions](#)

Annual contract

Pay annually by purchasing an annual contract from your cloud provider's marketplace.

Similar to an hourly subscription, BlueXP prompts you to subscribe to the annual contract that's available in the AWS Marketplace.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the steps in BlueXP.
 - a. On the **Details and Credentials** page, click **Edit Credentials > Add Subscription** and then follow the prompts to subscribe to the annual contract in the AWS Marketplace.

Edit Credentials & Add Subscription

Select a subscription option and click **Continue**. The AWS Marketplace enables you to view pricing details and then subscribe.

☒ **Pay-Per-TiB - Annual Contract**

Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP with an annual, upfront payment.

☐ **Pay-as-you-go**

Pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate.

The next steps:

1 AWS Marketplace

Subscribe and then click **Set Up Your Account** to configure your account.

2 Cloud Manager

Save your subscription and associate the Marketplace subscription with your AWS credentials.

Continue

Cancel

- b. After you return to BlueXP, select a capacity-based package when you reach the charging methods page.

Select Charging Method

☒ **Professional**

By capacity



☐ **Essential**

By capacity



☐ **Freemium (Up to 500 GiB)**

By capacity



☐ **Per Node**

By node



[View step-by-step instructions to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.](#)

Keystone Subscription

A Keystone Subscription is a pay-as-you-grow subscription-based service. [Learn more about NetApp Keystone Subscriptions.](#)

Steps

1. If you don't have a subscription yet, [contact NetApp](#)
2. [Contact NetApp](#) to authorize your BlueXP user account with one or more Keystone Subscriptions.
3. After NetApp authorizes your account, [link your subscriptions for use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).
4. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the steps in BlueXP.
 - a. Select the Keystone Subscription charging method when prompted to choose a charging method.

Select Charging Method

☒ **Keystone** By capacity ^

Storage management

Charged against your NetApp credit

Keystone Subscription

A-AMRITA1

☐ Professional By capacity v

☐ Essential By capacity v

☐ Freemium (Up to 500 GiB) By capacity v

☐ Per Node By node v

[View step-by-step instructions to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.](#)

Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

You can launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in a single-system configuration or as an HA pair in AWS.

Before you begin

You need the following to create a working environment.

- A Connector that's up and running.

- You should have a [Connector that is associated with your project or workspace](#).
- [You should be prepared to leave the Connector running at all times](#).
- An understanding of the configuration that you want to use.

You should have prepared by choosing a configuration and by obtaining AWS networking information from your administrator. For details, refer to [Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#).

- An understanding of what's required to set up licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[Learn how to set up licensing](#).

- DNS and Active Directory for CIFS configurations.

For details, refer to [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#).

Launch a single-node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS

If you want to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you need to create a new working environment in BlueXP.

About this task

Immediately after you create the working environment, BlueXP launches a test instance in the specified VPC to verify connectivity. If successful, BlueXP immediately terminates the instance and then starts deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If BlueXP cannot verify connectivity, creation of the working environment fails. The test instance is either a t2.nano (for default VPC tenancy) or m3.medium (for dedicated VPC tenancy).

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the prompts.
3. **Choose a Location:** Select **Amazon Web Services** and **Cloud Volumes ONTAP Single Node**.
4. If you're prompted, [create a Connector](#).
5. **Details and Credentials:** Optionally change the AWS credentials and subscription, enter a working environment name, add tags if needed, and then enter a password.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	BlueXP uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the Amazon EC2 instance. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.

Field	Description
Add tags	<p>AWS tags are metadata for your AWS resources. BlueXP adds the tags to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and each AWS resource associated with the instance.</p> <p>You can add up to four tags from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four tags when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about tags, refer to AWS Documentation: Tagging your Amazon EC2 Resources.</p>
User name and password	<p>These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster administrator account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI. Keep the default <i>admin</i> user name or change it to a custom user name.</p>
Edit Credentials	<p>Choose the AWS credentials associated with the account where you want to deploy this system. You can also associate the AWS marketplace subscription to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.</p> <p>Click Add Subscription to associate the selected credentials with a new AWS marketplace subscription. The subscription can be for an annual contract or to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate.</p> <p>Learn how to add additional AWS credentials to BlueXP.</p>

The following video shows how to associate a pay-as-you-go marketplace subscription to your AWS credentials:

[Subscribe to BlueXP from the AWS marketplace](#)



If multiple IAM users work in the same AWS account, then each user needs to subscribe. After the first user subscribes, the AWS marketplace informs subsequent users that they're already subscribed, as shown in the image below. While a subscription is in place for the *AWS account*, each IAM user needs to associate themselves with that subscription. If you see the message shown below, click the **click here** link to go to the BlueXP website and complete the process.

Cloud Manager (for Cloud Volumes ONTAP)

You are currently subscribed to this product and will be charged for your accumulated usage at the end of your next billing cycle, based on the costs listed in Pricing information on the right.

Having issues signing up for your product?
If you were unable to complete the set-up process for this software, please [click here](#) to be taken to the product's registration area.

Subscribe

You are already subscribed to this product

Pricing Details

Software Fees

6. **Services:** Keep the services enabled or disable the individual services that you don't want to use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [Learn more about BlueXP classification](#)
- [Learn more about BlueXP backup and recovery](#)



If you would like to utilize WORM and data tiering, you must disable BlueXP backup and recovery and deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment with version 9.8 or above.

7. **Location & Connectivity:** Enter the network information that you recorded in the [AWS worksheet](#).

The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
VPC	If you have an AWS Outpost, you can deploy a single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in that Outpost by selecting the Outpost VPC. The experience is the same as any other VPC that resides in AWS.
Generated security group	<p>If you let BlueXP generate the security group for you, you need to choose how you'll allow traffic:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you choose Selected VPC only, the source for inbound traffic is the subnet range of the selected VPC and the subnet range of the VPC where the Connector resides. This is the recommended option.• If you choose All VPCs, the source for inbound traffic is the 0.0.0.0/0 IP range.
Use existing security group	If you use an existing firewall policy, ensure that it includes the required rules. Learn about firewall rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP .

8. **Data Encryption:** Choose no data encryption or AWS-managed encryption.

For AWS-managed encryption, you can choose a different Customer Master Key (CMK) from your account or another AWS account.



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to set up the AWS KMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

[Learn more about supported encryption technologies](#).

9. **Charging Methods and NSS Account:** Specify which charging option would you like to use with this system, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.

- [Learn about licensing options for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).
- [Learn how to set up licensing](#).

10. **Cloud Volumes ONTAP Configuration** (annual AWS marketplace contract only): Review the default configuration and click **Continue** or click **Change Configuration** to select your own configuration.

If you keep the default configuration, then you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

11. **Preconfigured Packages:** Select one of the packages to quickly launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP, or click **Change Configuration** to select your own configuration.

If you choose one of the packages, then you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve

the configuration.

12. **IAM Role:** It's best to keep the default option to let BlueXP create the role for you.

If you prefer to use your own policy, it must meet [policy requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes](#).

13. **Licensing:** Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed and select an instance type and the instance tenancy.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then BlueXP updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 and 9.13.1 P4 is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.13 to 9.14.

14. **Underlying Storage Resources:** Choose a disk type, configure the underlying storage, and choose whether to keep data tiering enabled.

Note the following:

- The disk type is for the initial volume (and aggregate). You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes (and aggregates).
- If you choose a gp3 or io1 disk, BlueXP uses the Elastic Volumes feature in AWS to automatically increase the underlying storage disk capacity as needed. You can choose the initial capacity based on your storage needs and revise it after Cloud Volumes ONTAP is deployed. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes in AWS](#).
- If you choose a gp2 or st1 disk, you can select a disk size for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that BlueXP creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.
- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.
- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates.

[Learn how data tiering works](#).

15. **Write Speed & WORM:**

- a. Choose **Normal** or **High** write speed, if desired.

[Learn more about write speed](#).

- b. Activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

WORM can't be enabled if data tiering was enabled for Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions 9.7 and below. Reverting or downgrading to Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 is blocked after enabling WORM and tiering.

[Learn more about WORM storage](#).

- c. If you activate WORM storage, select the retention period.

16. **Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

[Learn about supported client protocols and versions](#).

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might

need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, BlueXP enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.
Initiator group and IQN (for iSCSI only)	<p>iSCSI storage targets are called LUNs (logical units) and are presented to hosts as standard block devices.</p> <p>Initiator groups are tables of iSCSI host node names and control which initiators have access to which LUNs.</p> <p>iSCSI targets connect to the network through standard Ethernet network adapters (NICs), TCP offload engine (TOE) cards with software initiators, converged network adapters (CNAs) or dedicated host bus adapters (HBAs) and are identified by iSCSI qualified names (IQNs).</p> <p>When you create an iSCSI volume, BlueXP automatically creates a LUN for you. We've made it simple by creating just one LUN per volume, so there's no management involved. After you create the volume, use the IQN to connect to the LUN from your hosts.</p>

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

Volume Details, Protection & Protocol

Details & Protection

Volume Name: Size (GB): ⓘ

Snapshot Policy:

default

▼

ⓘ Default Policy

Protocol

NFS
CIFS
iSCSI

Share name: Permissions:

Full Control

▼

Users / Groups:

Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon

17. **CIFS Setup:** If you chose the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers. If you configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. Refer to the BlueXP automation docs for details. Note that you can configure an NTP server only when creating a CIFS server. It's not configurable after you create the CIFS server.

18. **Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy:** Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and edit the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, refer to [Understanding volume usage profiles](#), [Data tiering overview](#), and [KB: What Inline Storage Efficiency features are supported with CVO?](#)

19. **Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.

- a. Review details about the configuration.
- b. Click **More information** to review details about support and the AWS resources that BlueXP will purchase.
- c. Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
- d. Click **Go**.

Result

BlueXP launches the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you have any issues launching the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click Re-create environment.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.
- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in AWS

If you want to launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in AWS, you need to create an HA working environment in BlueXP.

Limitation

At this time, HA pairs are not supported with AWS Outposts.

About this task

Immediately after you create the working environment, BlueXP launches a test instance in the specified VPC to verify connectivity. If successful, BlueXP immediately terminates the instance and then starts deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If BlueXP cannot verify connectivity, creation of the working environment fails. The test instance is either a t2.nano (for default VPC tenancy) or m3.medium (for dedicated VPC tenancy).

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment** and follow the prompts.
3. **Choose a Location:** Select **Amazon Web Services** and **Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA**.

Some AWS Local Zones are available.

Before you can use AWS Local Zones, you must enable Local Zones and create a subnet in the Local Zone in your AWS account. Follow the **Opt in to an AWS Local Zone** and **Extend your Amazon VPC to the Local Zone** steps in the [AWS tutorial "Get Started Deploying Low Latency Applications with AWS Local Zones"](#).

If you are running a Connector version 3.9.36 or below, you need to add the following permission to the AWS Connector role in the AWS EC2 console: DescribeAvailabilityZones.

4. **Details and Credentials:** Optionally change the AWS credentials and subscription, enter a working environment name, add tags if needed, and then enter a password.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	BlueXP uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the Amazon EC2 instance. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.
Add tags	<p>AWS tags are metadata for your AWS resources. BlueXP adds the tags to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and each AWS resource associated with the instance.</p> <p>You can add up to four tags from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four tags when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about tags, refer to AWS Documentation: Tagging your Amazon EC2 Resources.</p>
User name and password	These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster administrator account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI. Keep the default <i>admin</i> user name or change it to a custom user name.
Edit Credentials	<p>Choose the AWS credentials and marketplace subscription to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.</p> <p>Click Add Subscription to associate the selected credentials with a new AWS marketplace subscription. The subscription can be for an annual contract or to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP at an hourly rate.</p> <p>If you purchased a license directly from NetApp (bring your own license (BYOL)), then an AWS subscription isn't required. NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.</p> <p>Learn how to add additional AWS credentials to BlueXP.</p>

The following video shows how to associate a pay-as-you-go marketplace subscription to your AWS credentials:

[Subscribe to BlueXP from the AWS marketplace](#)



If multiple IAM users work in the same AWS account, then each user needs to subscribe. After the first user subscribes, the AWS marketplace informs subsequent users that they're already subscribed, as shown in the image below. While a subscription is in place for the AWS *account*, each IAM user needs to associate themselves with that subscription. If you see the message shown below, click the **click here** link to go to BlueXP website and complete the process.

5. **Services:** Keep the services enabled or disable the individual services that you don't want to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

- [Learn more about BlueXP classification](#)
- [Learn more about BlueXP backup and recovery](#)



If you would like to utilize WORM and data tiering, you must disable BlueXP backup and recovery and deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment with version 9.8 or above.

6. **HA Deployment Models:** Choose an HA configuration.

For an overview of the deployment models, refer to [Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA for AWS](#).

7. **Location and Connectivity** (single AZ) or **Region & VPC** (multiple AZs): Enter the network information that you recorded in the AWS worksheet.

The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Generated security group	If you let BlueXP generate the security group for you, you need to choose how you'll allow traffic: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you choose Selected VPC only, the source for inbound traffic is the subnet range of the selected VPC and the subnet range of the VPC where the Connector resides. This is the recommended option.• If you choose All VPCs, the source for inbound traffic is the 0.0.0.0/0 IP range.
Use existing security group	If you use an existing firewall policy, ensure that it includes the required rules. Learn about firewall rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP .

8. **Connectivity and SSH Authentication:** Choose connection methods for the HA pair and the mediator.

9. **Floating IPs:** If you chose multiple AZs, specify the floating IP addresses.

The IP addresses must be outside of the CIDR block for all VPCs in the region. For additional details, refer to [AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple AZs](#).

10. **Route Tables:** If you chose multiple AZs, select the route tables that should include routes to the floating IP addresses.

If you have more than one route table, it is very important to select the correct route tables. Otherwise, some clients might not have access to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair. For more information about route tables, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Route Tables](#).

11. **Data Encryption:** Choose no data encryption or AWS-managed encryption.

For AWS-managed encryption, you can choose a different Customer Master Key (CMK) from your account or another AWS account.



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to set up the AWS KMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

[Learn more about supported encryption technologies.](#)

12. **Charging Methods and NSS Account:** Specify which charging option would you like to use with this system, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.
 - [Learn about licensing options for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)
 - [Learn how to set up licensing.](#)

13. **Cloud Volumes ONTAP Configuration** (annual AWS Marketplace contract only): Review the default configuration and click **Continue** or click **Change Configuration** to select your own configuration.

If you keep the default configuration, then you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

14. **Preconfigured Packages** (hourly or BYOL only): Select one of the packages to quickly launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP, or click **Change Configuration** to select your own configuration.

If you choose one of the packages, then you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

15. **IAM Role:** It's best to keep the default option to let BlueXP create the role for you.

If you prefer to use your own policy, it must meet [policy requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes and the HA mediator](#).

16. **Licensing:** Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed and select an instance type and the instance tenancy.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then BlueXP updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.13.1 and 9.13.1 P4 is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.13 to 9.14.

17. **Underlying Storage Resources:** Choose a disk type, configure the underlying storage, and choose whether to keep data tiering enabled.

Note the following:

- The disk type is for the initial volume (and aggregate). You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes (and aggregates).
- If you choose a gp3 or io1 disk, BlueXP uses the Elastic Volumes feature in AWS to automatically increase the underlying storage disk capacity as needed. You can choose the initial capacity based on your storage needs and revise it after Cloud Volumes ONTAP is deployed. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes in AWS.](#)
- If you choose a gp2 or st1 disk, you can select a disk size for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that BlueXP creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.
- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.
- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates.

[Learn how data tiering works.](#)

18. **Write Speed & WORM:**

- a. Choose **Normal** or **High** write speed, if desired.

[Learn more about write speed.](#)

- b. Activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

WORM can't be enabled if data tiering was enabled for Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions 9.7 and below. Reverting or downgrading to Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 is blocked after enabling WORM and tiering.

[Learn more about WORM storage.](#)

- c. If you activate WORM storage, select the retention period.

19. **Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

[Learn about supported client protocols and versions.](#)

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, BlueXP enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

Field	Description
Initiator group and IQN (for iSCSI only)	<p>iSCSI storage targets are called LUNs (logical units) and are presented to hosts as standard block devices.</p> <p>Initiator groups are tables of iSCSI host node names and control which initiators have access to which LUNs.</p> <p>iSCSI targets connect to the network through standard Ethernet network adapters (NICs), TCP offload engine (TOE) cards with software initiators, converged network adapters (CNAs) or dedicated host bus adapters (HBAs) and are identified by iSCSI qualified names (IQNs).</p> <p>When you create an iSCSI volume, BlueXP automatically creates a LUN for you. We've made it simple by creating just one LUN per volume, so there's no management involved. After you create the volume, use the IQN to connect to the LUN from your hosts.</p>

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

Volume Details, Protection & Protocol

Details & Protection

Volume Name:

Size (GB):

Snapshot Policy:

Default Policy

Protocol

NFS **CIFS** iSCSI

Share name:

Permissions:

Users / Groups:

Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon

20. **CIFS Setup:** If you selected the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	<p>The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server.</p> <p>The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.</p>
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.

Field	Description
Organizational Unit	The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers. If you configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. Refer to the BlueXP automation docs for details. Note that you can configure an NTP server only when creating a CIFS server. It's not configurable after you create the CIFS server.

21. **Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy:** Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and edit the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, refer to [Choose a volume usage profile](#) and [Data tiering overview](#).

22. **Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.

- Review details about the configuration.
- Click **More information** to review details about support and the AWS resources that BlueXP will purchase.
- Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
- Click **Go**.

Result

BlueXP launches the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you experience any issues launching the HA pair, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click Re-create environment.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.
- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS Secret Cloud or AWS Top Secret Cloud

Similar to a standard AWS region, you can use BlueXP in [AWS Secret Cloud](#) and in [AWS Top Secret Cloud](#) to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, which provides enterprise-class features for your cloud storage. AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud are closed regions specific to the U.S. Intelligence Community; the instructions on this page only

apply to AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud region users.

Before you begin

Before you get started, review the supported versions in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud, and learn about private mode in BlueXP.

- Review the following supported versions in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud:
 - Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 P2
 - Version 3.9.32 of the Connector

The Connector is software that's required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS. You'll log in to BlueXP from the software that gets installed on the Connector instance. The SaaS website for BlueXP isn't supported in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud.

- Learn about private mode

In AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud, BlueXP operates in *private mode*. In private mode, there is no connectivity to the BlueXP SaaS layer. Users access BlueXP locally from the web-based console that's available from the Connector, not from the SaaS layer.

To learn more about how private mode works, refer to [BlueXP private deployment mode](#).

Step 1: Set up your networking

Set up your AWS networking so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can operate properly.

Steps

1. Choose the VPC and subnets in which you want to launch the Connector instance and Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances.
2. Ensure that your VPC and subnets will support connectivity between the Connector and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
3. Set up a VPC endpoint to the S3 service.

A VPC endpoint is required if you want to tier cold data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to low-cost object storage.

Step 2: Set up permissions

Set up IAM policies and roles that provide the Connector and Cloud Volumes ONTAP with the permissions that they need to perform actions in the AWS Secret Cloud or Top Secret Cloud.

You need an IAM policy and IAM role for each of the following:

- The Connector instance
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances
- For HA pairs, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA mediator instance (if you want to deploy HA pairs)

Steps

1. Go to the AWS IAM console and click **Policies**.
2. Create a policy for the Connector instance.



You create these policies to support the S3 buckets in your AWS environment. While creating the buckets later, ensure that the bucket names are prefixed with `fabric-pool-`. This requirement applies to both the AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud regions.

Secret regions

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "ec2:DescribeInstances",
      "ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus",
      "ec2:RunInstances",
      "ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute",
      "ec2:DescribeRouteTables",
      "ec2:DescribeImages",
      "ec2:CreateTags",
      "ec2:CreateVolume",
      "ec2:DescribeVolumes",
      "ec2:ModifyVolumeAttribute",
      "ec2>DeleteVolume",
      "ec2:CreateSecurityGroup",
      "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
      "ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups",
      "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress",
      "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress",
      "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
      "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress",
      "ec2:CreateNetworkInterface",
      "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
      "ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface",
      "ec2:ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute",
      "ec2:DescribeSubnets",
      "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
      "ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions",
      "ec2:CreateSnapshot",
      "ec2>DeleteSnapshot",
      "ec2:DescribeSnapshots",
      "ec2:GetConsoleOutput",
      "ec2:DescribeKeyPairs",
      "ec2:DescribeRegions",
      "ec2>DeleteTags",
      "ec2:DescribeTags",
      "cloudformation:CreateStack",
      "cloudformation>DeleteStack",
      "cloudformation:DescribeStacks",
      "cloudformation:DescribeStackEvents",
      "cloudformation:ValidateTemplate",
      "iam:PassRole",
```



```

        "iam:CreateRole",
        "iam:DeleteRole",
        "iam:PutRolePolicy",
        "iam:ListInstanceProfiles",
        "iam:CreateInstanceProfile",
        "iam:DeleteRolePolicy",
        "iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile",
        "iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile",
        "iam:DeleteInstanceProfile",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:GetBucketTagging",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "kms:List*",
        "kms:Describe*",
        "ec2:AssociateIamInstanceProfile",
        "ec2:DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations",
        "ec2:DisassociateIamInstanceProfile",
        "ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute",
        "ec2:CreatePlacementGroup",
        "ec2>DeletePlacementGroup"
    ],
    "Resource": "*"
},
{
    "Sid": "fabricPoolPolicy",
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "s3:DeleteBucket",
        "s3:GetLifecycleConfiguration",
        "s3:PutLifecycleConfiguration",
        "s3:PutBucketTagging",
        "s3:ListBucketVersions"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::fabric-pool*"
    ]
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "ec2:StartInstances",
        "ec2:StopInstances",
        "ec2:TerminateInstances",
        "ec2:AttachVolume",

```

```

        "ec2:DetachVolume"
    ],
    "Condition": {
        "StringLike": {
            "ec2:ResourceTag/WorkingEnvironment": "*"
        }
    },
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws-iso-b:ec2:*:*:instance/*"
    ]
},
{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
        "ec2:AttachVolume",
        "ec2:DetachVolume"
    ],
    "Resource": [
        "arn:aws-iso-b:ec2:*:*:volume/*"
    ]
}
]
}

```

Top Secret regions

```

{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [{
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Action": [
            "ec2:DescribeInstances",
            "ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus",
            "ec2:RunInstances",
            "ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute",
            "ec2:DescribeRouteTables",
            "ec2:DescribeImages",
            "ec2:CreateTags",
            "ec2:CreateVolume",
            "ec2:DescribeVolumes",
            "ec2:ModifyVolumeAttribute",
            "ec2>DeleteVolume",
            "ec2:CreateSecurityGroup",
            "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup",
            "ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups",
            "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress",

```

```
"ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress",
"ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress",
"ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress",
"ec2:CreateNetworkInterface",
"ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
"ec2>DeleteNetworkInterface",
"ec2:ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute",
"ec2:DescribeSubnets",
"ec2:DescribeVpcs",
"ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions",
"ec2:CreateSnapshot",
"ec2>DeleteSnapshot",
"ec2:DescribeSnapshots",
"ec2:GetConsoleOutput",
"ec2:DescribeKeyPairs",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"ec2>DeleteTags",
"ec2:DescribeTags",
"cloudformation:CreateStack",
"cloudformation>DeleteStack",
"cloudformation:DescribeStacks",
"cloudformation:DescribeStackEvents",
"cloudformation:ValidateTemplate",
"iam:PassRole",
"iam:CreateRole",
"iam>DeleteRole",
"iam:PutRolePolicy",
"iam:ListInstanceProfiles",
"iam:CreateInstanceProfile",
"iam>DeleteRolePolicy",
"iam:AddRoleToInstanceProfile",
"iam:RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile",
"iam>DeleteInstanceProfile",
"s3:GetObject",
"s3:ListBucket",
"s3:GetBucketTagging",
"s3:GetBucketLocation",
"s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
"kms:List*",
"kms:Describe*",
"ec2:AssociateIamInstanceProfile",
"ec2:DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations",
"ec2:DisassociateIamInstanceProfile",
"ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute",
"ec2:CreatePlacementGroup",
"ec2>DeletePlacementGroup"
```

```

    ],
    "Resource": "*"
  },
  {
    "Sid": "fabricPoolPolicy",
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "s3:DeleteBucket",
      "s3:GetLifecycleConfiguration",
      "s3:PutLifecycleConfiguration",
      "s3:PutBucketTagging",
      "s3:ListBucketVersions"
    ],
    "Resource": [
      "arn:aws-iso:s3:::fabric-pool*"
    ]
  },
  {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "ec2:StartInstances",
      "ec2:StopInstances",
      "ec2:TerminateInstances",
      "ec2:AttachVolume",
      "ec2:DetachVolume"
    ],
    "Condition": {
      "StringLike": {
        "ec2:ResourceTag/WorkingEnvironment": "*"
      }
    },
    "Resource": [
      "arn:aws-iso:ec2:*:*:instance/*"
    ]
  },
  {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "ec2:AttachVolume",
      "ec2:DetachVolume"
    ],
    "Resource": [
      "arn:aws-iso:ec2:*:*:volume/*"
    ]
  }
]

```

```
}
```

3. Create a policy for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Secret regions

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3>DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso-b:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }]
}
```

Top Secret regions

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:ListBucket",
      "s3:GetBucketLocation"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }, {
    "Action": [
      "s3:GetObject",
      "s3:PutObject",
      "s3:DeleteObject"
    ],
    "Resource": "arn:aws-iso:s3:::fabric-pool-*",
    "Effect": "Allow"
  }]
}

```

For HA pairs, if you plan to deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair, create a policy for the HA mediator.

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [{
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "ec2:AssignPrivateIpAddresses",
      "ec2:CreateRoute",
      "ec2>DeleteRoute",
      "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces",
      "ec2:DescribeRouteTables",
      "ec2:DescribeVpcs",
      "ec2:ReplaceRoute",
      "ec2:UnassignPrivateIpAddresses"
    ],
    "Resource": "*"
  }]
}

```

4. Create IAM roles with the role type Amazon EC2 and attach the policies that you created in the previous steps.

Create the role:

Similar to the policies, you should have one IAM role for the Connector and one for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes.

For HA pairs: Similar to the policies, you should have one IAM role for the Connector, one for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes, and one for the HA mediator (if you want to deploy HA pairs).

Select the role:

You must select the Connector IAM role when you launch the Connector instance. You can select the IAM roles for Cloud Volumes ONTAP when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment from BlueXP.

For HA pairs, you can select the IAM roles for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the HA mediator when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment from BlueXP.

Step 3: Set up the AWS KMS

If you want to use Amazon encryption with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, ensure that requirements are met for the AWS Key Management Service (KMS).

Steps

1. Ensure that an active Customer Master Key (CMK) exists in your account or in another AWS account.

The CMK can be an AWS-managed CMK or a customer-managed CMK.

2. If the CMK is in an AWS account separate from the account where you plan to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, then you need to obtain the ARN of that key.

You'll need to provide the ARN to BlueXP when you create the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

3. Add the IAM role for the Connector instance to the list of key users for a CMK.

This gives BlueXP permissions to use the CMK with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Step 4: Install the Connector and set up BlueXP

Before you can start using BlueXP to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you must install and set up the BlueXP Connector. The Connector enables BlueXP to manage resources and processes within your public cloud environment (this includes Cloud Volumes ONTAP).

Steps

1. Obtain a root certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) in the Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) Base-64 encoded X.509 format. Consult your organization's policies and procedures for obtaining the certificate.



For AWS Secret Cloud regions, you should upload the `NSS Root CA 2` certificate, and for Top Secret Cloud, the `Amazon Root CA 4` certificate. Ensure that you upload only these certificates and not the entire chain. The file for the certificate chain is large, and the upload can fail. If you have additional certificates, you can upload them later, as described in the next step.

You'll need to upload the certificate during the setup process. BlueXP uses the trusted certificate when sending requests to AWS over HTTPS.

2. Launch the Connector instance:
 - a. Go to the AWS Intelligence Community Marketplace page for BlueXP.
 - b. On the Custom Launch tab, choose the option to launch the instance from the EC2 console.
 - c. Follow the prompts to configure the instance.

Note the following as you configure the instance:

- We recommend `t3.xlarge`.
- You must choose the IAM role that you created when you set up permissions.
- You should keep the default storage options.
- The required connection methods for the Connector are as follows: SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS.

3. Set up BlueXP from a host that has a connection to the Connector instance:
 - a. Open a web browser and enter `https://ipaddress` where *ipaddress* is the IP address of the Linux host where you installed the Connector.
 - b. Specify a proxy server for connectivity to AWS services.
 - c. Upload the certificate that you obtained in step 1.
 - d. Select **Set Up New BlueXP** and follow the prompts to set up the system.
 - **System Details:** Enter a name for the Connector and your company name.
 - **Create Admin User:** Create the admin user for the system.

This user account runs locally on the system. There's no connection to the `auth0` service available through BlueXP.

- **Review:** Review the details, accept the license agreement, and then select **Set Up**.

- e. To complete installation of the CA-signed certificate, restart the Connector instance from the EC2 console.
4. After the Connector restarts, log in using the administrator user account that you created in the Setup wizard.

Step 5: (optional) Install a private mode certificate

This step is optional for AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud regions, and is required only if you have additional certificates apart from the root certificates that you installed in the previous step.

Steps

1. List existing installed certificates.
 - a. To collect the occm container docker id (identified name “ds-occm-1”), run the following command:

```
docker ps
```

- b. To get inside occm container, run the following command:

```
docker exec -it <docker-id> /bin/sh
```

- c. To collect the password from “TRUST_STORE_PASSWORD” environment variable, run the following command:

```
env
```

- d. To list all installed certificates in truststore, run the following command and use the password collected in the previous step:

```
keytool -list -v -keystore occm.truststore
```

2. Add a certificate.

- a. To collect occm container docker id (identified name “ds-occm-1”), run the following command:

```
docker ps
```

- b. To get inside occm container, run the following command:

```
docker exec -it <docker-id> /bin/sh
```

Save the new certificate file inside.

- c. To collect the password from “TRUST_STORE_PASSWORD” environment variable, run the following

command:

```
env
```

- d. To add the certificate to the truststore, run the following command and use the password from the previous step:

```
keytool -import -alias <alias-name> -file <certificate-file-name>  
-keystore occm.truststore
```

- e. To check that the certificate installed, run the following command:

```
keytool -list -v -keystore occm.truststore -alias <alias-name>
```

- f. To exit occm container, run the following command:

```
exit
```

- g. To reset occm container, run the following command:

```
docker restart <docker-id>
```

Step 6: Add a license to the BlueXP digital wallet

If you purchased a license from NetApp, you need to add it to the BlueXP digital wallet so that you can select the license when you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. The digital wallet identifies these licenses as unassigned.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. On the **Cloud Volumes ONTAP** tab, select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
3. Click **Unassigned**.
4. Click **Add Unassigned Licenses**.
5. Enter the serial number of the license or upload the license file.
6. If you don't have the license file yet, you'll need to manually upload the license file from netapp.com.
 - a. Go to the [NetApp License File Generator](#) and log in using your NetApp Support Site credentials.
 - b. Enter your password, choose your product, enter the serial number, confirm that you have read and accepted the privacy policy, and then click **Submit**.
 - c. Choose whether you want to receive the serialnumber.NLF JSON file through email or direct download.
7. Click **Add License**.

Result

BlueXP adds the license to the digital wallet. The license will be identified as unassigned until you associate it with a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. After that happens, the license moves to the BYOL tab in the digital wallet.

Step 7: Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP from BlueXP

You can launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud by creating new working environments in BlueXP.

Before you begin

For HA pairs, a key pair is required to enable key-based SSH authentication to the HA mediator.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Add Working Environment**.
2. Under **Create**, select Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For HA: Under **Create**, select Cloud Volumes ONTAP or Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA.

3. Complete the steps in the wizard to launch the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.



While making selections through the wizard, do not select **Data Sense & Compliance** and **Backup to Cloud** under **Services**. Under **Preconfigured Packages**, select **Change Configuration** only, and ensure that you haven't selected any other option. Preconfigured packages aren't supported in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud regions, and if selected, your deployment will fail.

Notes for deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple Availability Zones

Note the following as you complete the wizard for HA pairs.

- You should configure a transit gateway when you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple Availability Zones (AZs). For instructions, refer to [Set up an AWS transit gateway](#).
- Deploy the configuration as the following because only two AZs were available in the AWS Top Secret Cloud at the time of publication:
 - Node 1: Availability Zone A
 - Node 2: Availability Zone B
 - Mediator: Availability Zone A or B

Notes for deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP in both single and HA nodes

Note the following as you complete the wizard:

- You should leave the default option to use a generated security group.

The predefined security group includes the rules that Cloud Volumes ONTAP needs to operate successfully. If you have a requirement to use your own, you can refer to the security group section below.

- You must choose the IAM role that you created when preparing your AWS environment.
- The underlying AWS disk type is for the initial Cloud Volumes ONTAP volume.

You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes.

- The performance of AWS disks is tied to disk size.

You should choose the disk size that gives you the sustained performance that you need. Refer to AWS documentation for more details about EBS performance.

- The disk size is the default size for all disks on the system.



If you need a different size later, you can use the Advanced allocation option to create an aggregate that uses disks of a specific size.

Result

BlueXP launches the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You can track the progress in the timeline.

Step 8: Install security certificates for data tiering

You need to manually install security certificates for enabling data tiering in AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud regions.

Before you begin

1. Create S3 buckets.



Ensure that the bucket names are prefixed with `fabric-pool-`. For example `fabric-pool-testbucket`.

2. Keep the root certificates that you installed in step 4 handy.

Steps

1. Copy the text from the root certificates that you installed in step 4.
2. Securely connect to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system by using the CLI.
3. Install the root certificates. You might need to press the ENTER key multiple times:

```
security certificate install -type server-ca -cert-name <certificate-name>
```

4. When prompted, enter the entire copied text, including and from `----- BEGIN CERTIFICATE -----` to `----- END CERTIFICATE -----`.
5. Keep a copy of the CA-signed digital certificate for future reference.
6. Retain the CA name and certificate serial number.
7. Configure the object store for AWS Secret Cloud and Top Secret Cloud regions: `set -privilege advanced -confirmations off`
8. Run this command to configure the object store.



All Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) should be suffixed with `-iso-b`, such as `arn:aws-iso-b`. For example, if a resource requires an ARN with a region, for Top Secret Cloud, use the naming convention as `us-iso-b` for the `-server` flag. For AWS Secret Cloud, use `us-iso-b-1`.

```
storage aggregate object-store config create -object-store-name  
<S3Bucket> -provider-type AWS_S3 -auth-type EC2-IAM -server <s3.us-iso-  
b-1.server_name> -container-name <fabric-pool-testbucket> -is-ssl  
-enabled true -port 443
```

9. Verify that the object store was created successfully: `storage aggregate object-store show -instance`
10. Attach the object store to the aggregate. This should be repeated for every new aggregate: `storage aggregate object-store attach -aggregate <aggr1> -object-store-name <S3Bucket>`

Use Cloud Volumes ONTAP

License management

Manage capacity-based licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Manage your capacity-based licenses from the BlueXP digital wallet to ensure that your NetApp account has enough capacity for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Capacity-based licenses enable you to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP per TiB of capacity.

The *BlueXP digital wallet* enables you to manage licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP from a single location. You can add new licenses and update existing licenses.



While the actual usage and metering for the products and services managed in BlueXP are always calculated in GiB and TiB, the terms GB/GiB and TB/TiB are used interchangeably. This is reflected in the Cloud Marketplace listings, price quotes, listing descriptions, and in other supporting documentation

[Learn more about Cloud Volumes ONTAP licenses.](#)

How licenses are added to the BlueXP digital wallet

After you purchase a license from your NetApp sales representative, NetApp will send you an email with the serial number and additional licensing details.

In the meantime, BlueXP automatically queries NetApp's licensing service to obtain details about the licenses associated with your NetApp Support Site account. If there are no errors, BlueXP automatically adds the licenses to the digital wallet.

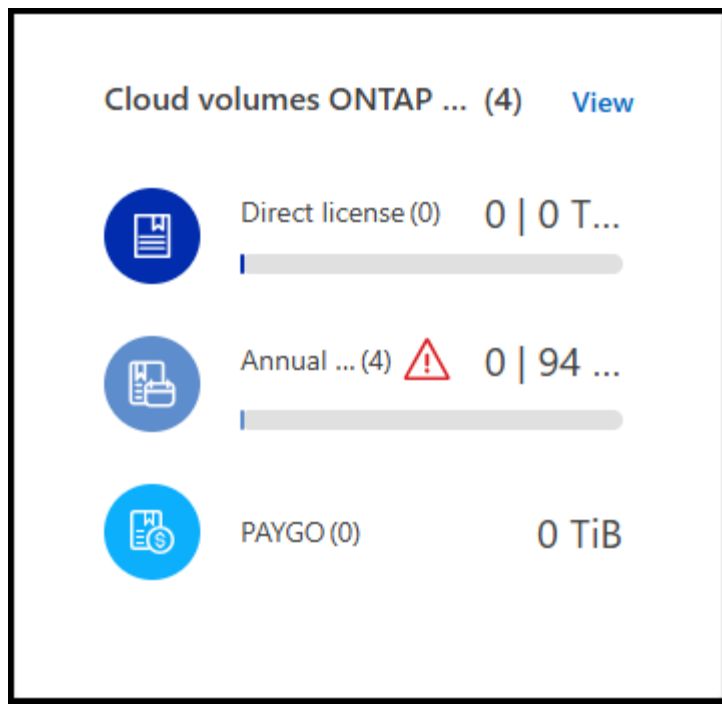
If BlueXP can't add the license, you'll need to manually add them to the digital wallet yourself. For example, if the Connector is installed in a location that doesn't have internet access, you'll need to add the licenses yourself. [Learn how to add purchased licenses to your account.](#)

View the consumed capacity in your account

The BlueXP digital wallet shows you the total consumed capacity in your account and the consumed capacity by licensing package. This can help you understand how you're being charged and whether you need to purchase additional capacity.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. On the **Overview** tab, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile displays the current capacity provisioned for your account.



- *Direct license* is the total provisioned capacity of all Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in your NetApp account. The charging is based on each volume's provisioned size, regardless of local, used, stored, or effective space within the volume.
- *Annual contract* is the total licensed capacity (bring your own license (BYOL) or Marketplace Contract) that you purchased from NetApp.
- *PAYGO* is the total provisioned capacity using cloud marketplace subscriptions. Charging via PAYGO is used only if the consumed capacity is higher than the licensed capacity or if there is no BYOL license available in the BlueXP digital wallet.


3. Select **View** to see the consumed capacity for each of your licensing packages.
4. Select the **Licenses** tab to see details for each package license that you have purchased.


To better understand the capacities that display for the Essentials package, you should be familiar with how charging works. [Learn about charging for the Essentials package.](#)

5. Select the **Subscriptions** tab to see the consumed capacity by license consumption model. This tab includes both PAYGO and annual contract licenses.

You'll only see the subscriptions that are associated with the organization that you are that you're currently viewing.

6. As you view the information about your subscriptions, you can interact with the details in the table as follows:
 - Expand a row to view more details.

Subscriptions (29)							
Provider	Name	Type	Service	Start Date	Status		
	AWS subscription	PAYGO	NetApp BlueXP	Apr 04, 2024	Subscribed	...	^
NetApp BlueXP			N/A		N/A		
Product Title			Term		Auto Renew		

- Select  to choose which columns appear in the table. Note that the Term and Auto Renew columns don't appear by default. The Auto Renew column displays renewal information for Azure contracts only.

Viewing package details

You can view details about the capacity used per package by switching to legacy mode on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP page.

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. On the **Overview** tab, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile displays the current capacity provisioned for your account.
3. Select **View** to see the provisioned capacity for each of your licensing packages.
4. Select **Switch to advanced view**.


Overview > Cloud Volumes ONTAP


Cloud Volumes ONTAP


View

Capacity Based Licenses

[Usage report](#)
[Switch to advanced view](#)


Direct license (0)
0 | 0 TiB


Annual contract (1)
0 | 8 TiB


PAYGO (0)
0 TiB

5. View the details of the package you want to see.

Overview > Cloud Volumes ONTAP


Cloud Volumes ONTAP


View


Capacity Based Licenses

[Switch to standard view](#)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP Packages Summary
[Usage report](#)


0 TiB
Total consumed capacity


8 TiB
Total precommitted capacity


0 TiB
Total PAYGO

Change charging methods

Capacity-based licensing is available in the form of a *package*. When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, you can choose from several licensing packages based on your business needs. If your needs change after you create the working environment, you can change the package at any time. For example, you might change from the Essentials package to the Professional package.

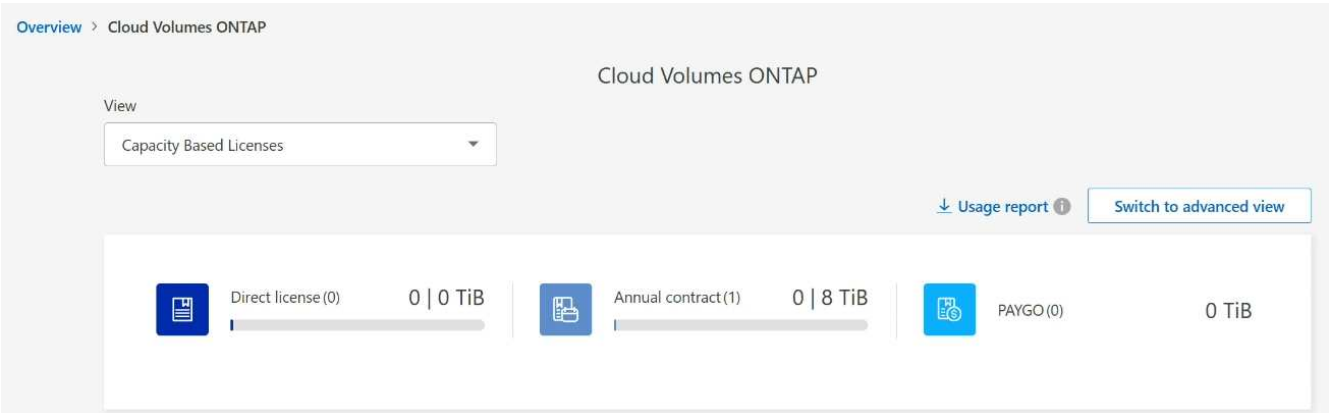
[Learn more about capacity-based licensing packages.](#)

About this task

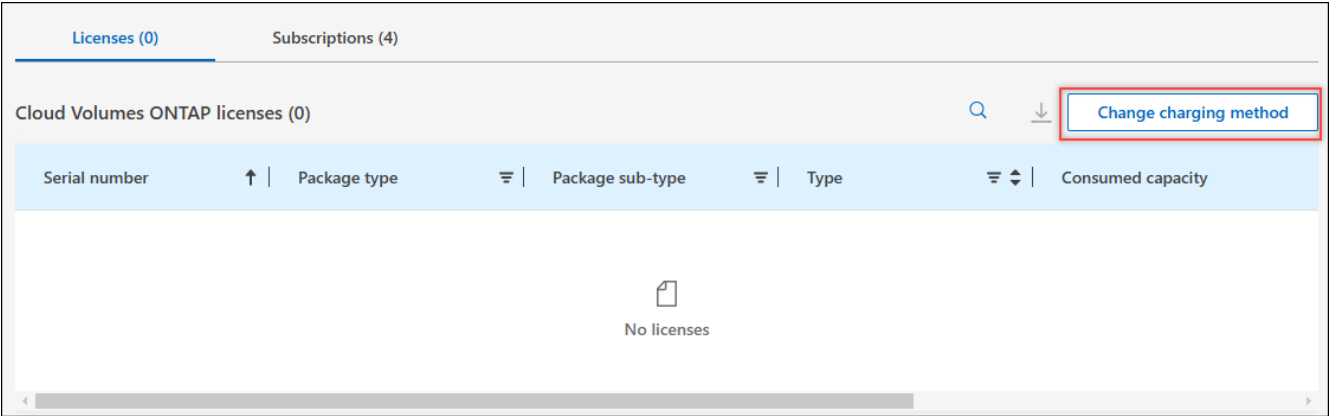
- Changing the charging method doesn't affect whether you're charged through a license purchased from NetApp (BYOL) or from your cloud provider's marketplace pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription.
- BlueXP always attempts to charge against a license first. If a license isn't available, it charges against a marketplace subscription. No "conversion" is required for BYOL to marketplace subscription or vice versa.
- If you have a private offer or contract from your cloud provider's marketplace, changing to a charging method that's not included in your contract will result in charging against BYOL (if you purchased a license from NetApp) or PAYGO.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Switch to advanced view**.



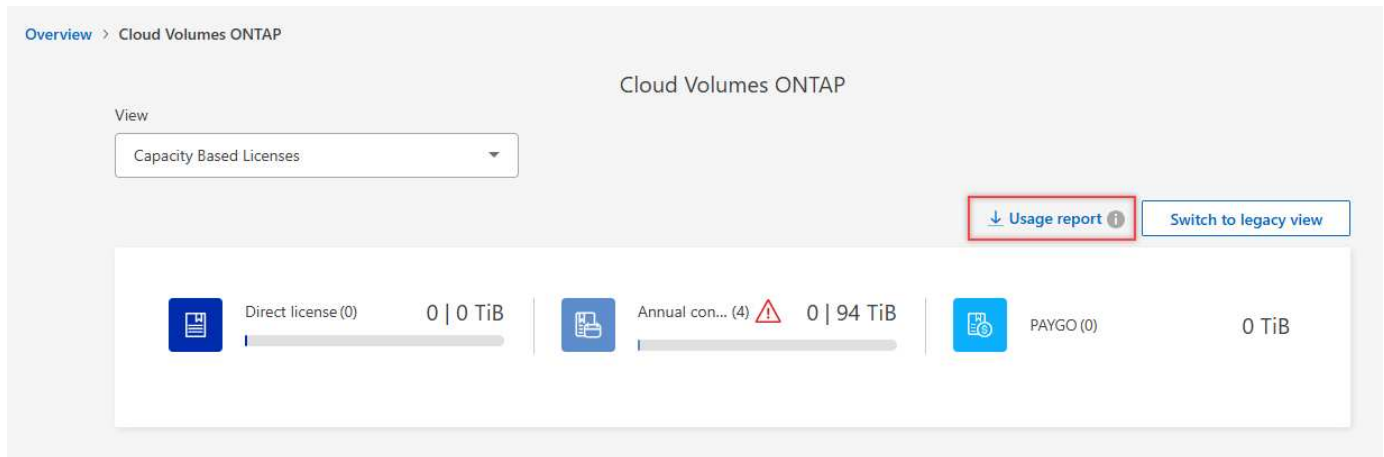
5. Scroll down to the **Capacity-based license** table and select **Change charging method**.



6. On the **Change charging method** pop-up, select a working environment, choose the new charging method, and then confirm your understanding that changing the package type will affect service charges.
7. Select **Change charging method**.

Download usage reports

You can download four usage reports from the BlueXP digital wallet. These usage reports provide capacity details of your subscriptions and tell you how you're being charged for the resources in your Cloud Volumes ONTAP subscriptions. The downloadable reports capture data at a point in time and can be easily shared with others.



The following reports are available for download. Capacity values shown are in TiB.

- **High-level usage:** This report includes the following information:
 - Total consumed capacity
 - Total precommitted capacity
 - Total BYOL capacity
 - Total Marketplace contracts capacity
 - Total PAYGO capacity
- **Cloud Volumes ONTAP package usage:** This report includes the following information for each package:
 - Total consumed capacity
 - Total precommitted capacity
 - Total BYOL capacity
 - Total Marketplace contracts capacity
 - Total PAYGO capacity
- **Storage VMs usage:** This report shows how charged capacity is broken down across Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems and storage virtual machines (SVMs). This information is only available in the report. It contains the following information:
 - Working environment ID and name (appears as the UUID)
 - Cloud
 - NetApp account ID
 - Working environment configuration

- SVM name
- Provisioned capacity
- Charged capacity roundup
- Marketplace billing term
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP package or feature
- Charging SaaS Marketplace subscription name
- Charging SaaS Marketplace subscription ID
- Workload type
- **Volumes usage:** This report shows how charged capacity is broken down by volumes in a working environment. This information is not available on any screen in the digital wallet. It includes the following information:
 - Working environment ID and name (appears as the UUID)
 - SVN name
 - Volume ID
 - Volume type
 - Volume provisioned capacity



FlexClone volumes aren't included in this report because these types of volumes don't incur charges.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. On the **Overview** tab, select **View** from the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile.
3. Select **Usage report**.

The usage report downloads.

4. Open the downloaded file to access the reports.

Manage Keystone subscriptions through BlueXP

Manage your Keystone subscriptions from the BlueXP digital wallet by enabling subscriptions for use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP and by requesting changes to the committed capacity for your subscription's service levels. Requesting additional capacity for a service level provides more storage for on-premises ONTAP clusters or for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

NetApp Keystone is a flexible pay-as-you-grow subscription-based service that delivers a hybrid cloud experience for customers who prefer OpEx to CapEx or leasing.

[Learn more about Keystone](#)

Authorize your account

Before you can use and manage Keystone subscriptions in BlueXP, you need to contact NetApp to authorize

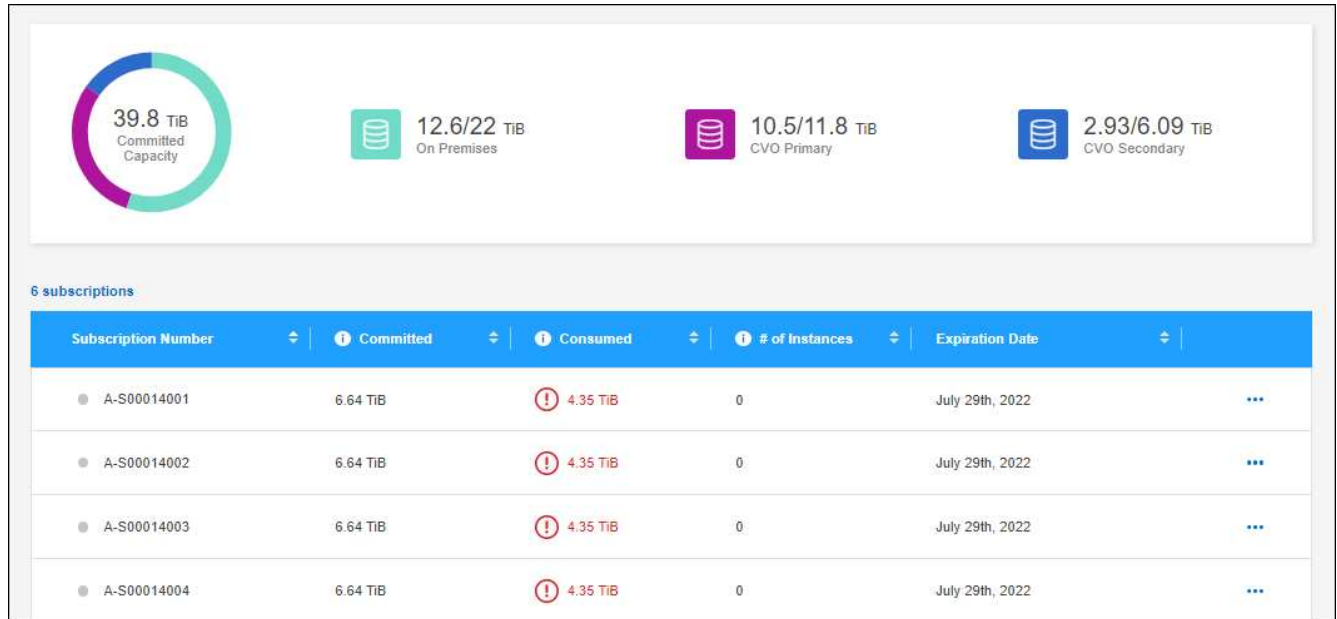
your BlueXP user account with your Keystone subscriptions.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select **Keystone Subscriptions**.
3. If you see the **Welcome to NetApp Keystone** page, send an email to the address listed on the page.

A NetApp representative will process your request by authorizing your user account to access the subscriptions.

4. Come back to the **Keystone Subscriptions** tab to view your subscriptions.



The screenshot displays the Keystone Subscriptions interface. At the top, there are four capacity metrics: a donut chart for '39.8 TiB Committed Capacity', '12.6/22 TiB On Premises', '10.5/11.8 TiB CVO Primary', and '2.93/6.09 TiB CVO Secondary'. Below these, a section titled '6 subscriptions' contains a table with the following data:

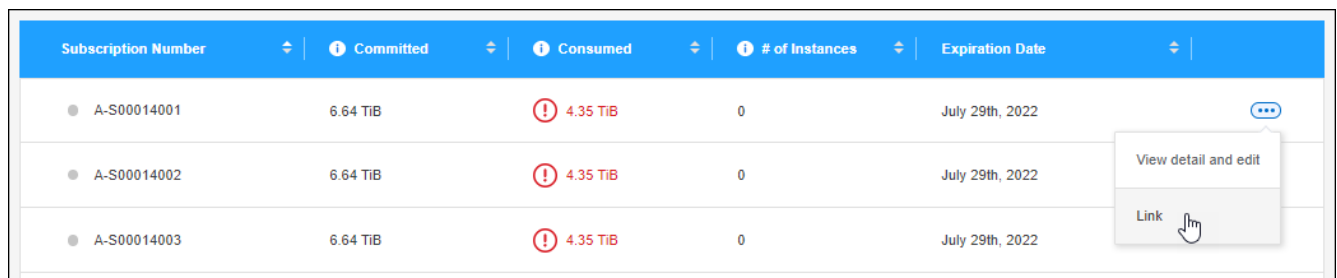
Subscription Number	Committed	Consumed	# of Instances	Expiration Date
A-S00014001	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022
A-S00014002	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022
A-S00014003	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022
A-S00014004	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022

Link a subscription

After NetApp authorizes your account, you can link Keystone subscriptions for use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP. This action enables users to select the subscription as the charging method for new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select **Keystone Subscriptions**.
3. For the subscription that you want to link, click **...** and select **Link**.



This screenshot shows the same subscription table as before, but with a context menu open for the first row (A-S00014001). The menu includes the option 'Link', which is highlighted by a mouse cursor.

Subscription Number	Committed	Consumed	# of Instances	Expiration Date
A-S00014001	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022
A-S00014002	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022
A-S00014003	6.64 TiB	4.35 TiB	0	July 29th, 2022

Result

The subscription is now linked to your BlueXP organization or account and available to select when creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.



Request more or less committed capacity

If you want to change the committed capacity for your subscription's service levels, you can send a request to NetApp directly from BlueXP. Requesting additional capacity for a service level provides more storage for on-premises clusters or for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select **Keystone Subscriptions**.
3. For the subscription that you want adjust the capacity, click **...** and select **View detail and edit**.
4. Enter the requested committed capacity for one or more subscriptions.

Subscription Modification for A-S00014001

Service Level	Current Committed Capacity	Current Consumed Capacity	Requested Committed Capacity
Extreme	0.977 TiB	0.293 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
Premium	0.977 TiB	0.488 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
Performance	0 TiB	0 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
Standard	0.732 TiB	0.439 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
Value	0.977 TiB	 0.879 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
Data Tiering	0 TiB	0 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB
CVO Primary	1.96 TiB	 1.76 TiB	<input type="text" value="3"/> TiB
CVO Secondary	1.02 TiB	0.488 TiB	<input type="text" value="Enter amount"/> TiB

Additional Information

Is there anything else we should know about your request?
Please be as descriptive as possible.

5. Scroll down, enter any additional details for the request, and then click **Submit**.

Result

Your request creates a ticket in NetApp's system for processing.

Monitor usage

The BlueXP digital advisor dashboard enables you to monitor Keystone subscription usage and to generate reports.

[Learn more about monitoring subscription usage](#)

Unlink a subscription

If you no longer want to use a Keystone subscription with BlueXP, you can unlink the subscription. Note that you can only unlink a subscription that isn't attached to an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP subscription.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select **Keystone**.
3. For the subscription that you want to unlink, click **...** and select **Unlink**.

Result

The subscription is unlinked from your BlueXP organization or account and no longer available to select when creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

Manage node-based licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Manage node-based licenses in the BlueXP digital wallet to ensure that each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system has a valid license with the required capacity.

Node-based licenses are the previous generation licensing model (and not available for new customers):

- Bring your own license (BYOL) licenses purchased from NetApp
- Hourly pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscriptions from your cloud provider's marketplace

The *BlueXP digital wallet* enables you to manage licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP from a single location. You can add new licenses and update existing licenses.

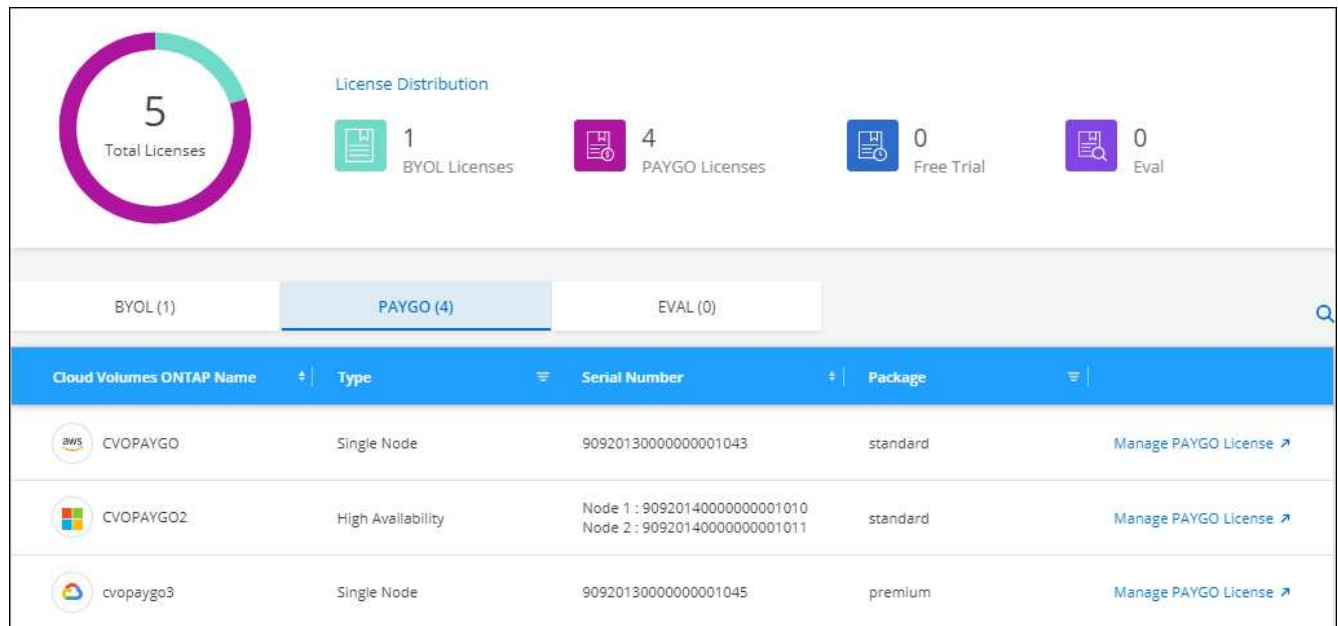
[Learn more about Cloud Volumes ONTAP licenses.](#)

Manage PAYGO licenses

The BlueXP digital wallet page enables you to view details about each of your PAYGO Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, including the serial number and PAYGO license type.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. Click **PAYGO**.
6. View details in the table about each of your PAYGO licenses.



7. If needed, click **Manage PAYGO License** to change the PAYGO license or to change the instance type.

Manage BYOL licenses

Manage licenses that you purchased directly from NetApp by adding and removing system licenses and extra capacity licenses.



NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

Add unassigned licenses

Add a node-based license to the BlueXP digital wallet so that you can select the license when you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. The digital wallet identifies these licenses as *unassigned*.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. Click **Unassigned**.
6. Click **Add Unassigned Licenses**.
7. Enter the serial number of the license or upload the license file.

If you don't have the license file yet, refer to the section below.

8. Click **Add License**.

Result

BlueXP adds the license to the digital wallet. The license will be identified as unassigned until you associate it with a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. After that happens, the license moves to the **BYOL** tab in the digital wallet.

Exchange unassigned node-based licenses

If you have an unassigned node-based license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP that you haven't used, you can exchange the license by converting it to a BlueXP backup and recovery license, a BlueXP classification license, or a BlueXP tiering license.

Exchanging the license revokes the Cloud Volumes ONTAP license and creates a dollar-equivalent license for the service:

- Licensing for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair is converted to a 51 TiB direct license
- Licensing for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP single node is converted to a 32 TiB direct license

The converted license has the same expiration date as the Cloud Volumes ONTAP license.

[View walkthrough of how to exchange node-based licenses.](#)

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. Click **Unassigned**.
6. Click **Exchange License**.

BYOL (14)	Eval (2)	Unassigned (3)	PAYGO (6)		Q	Add Unassigned Licenses
Serial Number	Type	Cloud Provider	License Expiry	Status		
012345678901234567890	Single Node	All Providers	April 20, 2022	Unassigned	Exchange License	...
012345678901234567891	Single Node	Azure	April 20, 2022	Unassigned	Exchange License	...
012345678901234567892	Single Node	AWS	January 1, 2022	Exchanged to Cloud Tiering on August 1, 2021		...

7. Select the service that you'd like to exchange the license with.
8. If you're prompted, select an additional license for the HA pair.
9. Read the legal consent and click **Agree**.

Result

BlueXP converts the unassigned license to the service that you selected. You can view the new license in the **Data Services Licenses** tab.

Obtain a system license file

In most cases, BlueXP can automatically obtain your license file using your NetApp Support Site account. But if it can't, then you'll need to manually upload the license file. If you don't have the license file, you can obtain it from netapp.com.

Steps

1. Go to the [NetApp License File Generator](#) and log in using your NetApp Support Site credentials.
2. Enter your password, choose your product, enter the serial number, confirm that you have read and accepted the privacy policy, and then click **Submit**.

Example

License Generator

The following fields are pre-populated based on the NetApp SSO login provided.
To download the corresponding NetApp license file, re-enter your SSO password along with the correct Product Line and Product Serial number.

First Name: Ben

Last Name:

Company: Network Appliance, Inc

Email Address:

Username:

Product Line*

- ONTAP Select - Standard
- ONTAP Select - Premium
- ONTAP Select - Premium XL
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS (single node)
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS (HA)
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for GCP (single node or HA)
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Microsoft Azure (single node)
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Microsoft Azure (HA)
- Service Level Manager - SLO Advanced
- StorageGRID Webscale
- StorageGRID WhiteBox
- SnapCenter Standard (capacity-based)

☐ I have read NetApp's new **Global Data Privacy Policy** and agree that NetApp may use my personal data.

3. Choose whether you want to receive the serialnumber.NLF JSON file through email or direct download.

Update a system license

When you renew a BYOL subscription by contacting a NetApp representative, BlueXP automatically obtains the new license from NetApp and installs it on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If BlueXP can't access the license file over the secure internet connection, you can obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to BlueXP.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. In the **BYOL** tab, expand the details for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
6. Click the action menu next to the system license and select **Update License**.
7. Upload the license file (or files if you have an HA pair).
8. Click **Update License**.

Result

BlueXP updates the license on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Manage extra capacity licenses

You can purchase extra capacity licenses for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL system to allocate more than the 368 TiB of capacity that's provided with a BYOL system license. For example, you might purchase one extra license capacity to allocate up to 736 TiB of capacity to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Or you could purchase three extra capacity licenses to get up to 1.4 PiB.

The number of licenses that you can purchase for a single node system or HA pair is unlimited.

Add capacity licenses

Purchase an extra capacity license by contacting us through the chat icon in the lower-right of BlueXP. After you purchase the license, you can apply it to a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. In the **BYOL** tab, expand the details for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
6. Click **Add Capacity License**.
7. Enter the serial number or upload the license file (or files if you have an HA pair).
8. Click **Add Capacity License**.

Update capacity licenses

If you extended the term of an extra capacity license, you'll need to update the license in BlueXP.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.
2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. In the **BYOL** tab, expand the details for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
6. Click the action menu next to the capacity license and select **Update License**.
7. Upload the license file (or files if you have an HA pair).
8. Click **Update License**.

Remove capacity licenses

If an extra capacity license expired and is no longer in use, then you can remove it at any time.

Steps

1. From the BlueXP navigation menu, select **Governance > Digital wallet**.

2. Select the **Overview** tab.
3. On the Cloud Volumes ONTAP tile, select **View**.
4. Select **Node Based Licenses** from the drop-down.
5. In the **BYOL** tab, expand the details for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
6. Click the action menu next to the capacity license and select **Remove License**.
7. Click **Remove**.

Change between PAYGO and BYOL

Converting a system from PAYGO by-node licensing to BYOL by-node licensing (and vice versa) isn't supported. If you want to switch between a pay-as-you-go subscription and a BYOL subscription, then you need to deploy a new system and replicate data from the existing system to the new system.

Steps

1. Create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.
2. Set up a one-time data replication between the systems for each volume that you need to replicate.

[Learn how to replicate data between systems](#)

3. Terminate the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that you no longer need by deleting the original working environment.

[Learn how to delete a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.](#)

Related links

<https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/bluexp-cloud-volumes-ontap/aws/concept-licensing.html#end-of-availability-of-node-based-licenses> End of availability of node-based licenses
[Convert node-based licenses to capacity based](#)

Volume and LUN administration

Create a FlexVol volume on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system

If you need more storage after you launch your initial Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you can create new FlexVol volumes for NFS, CIFS, or iSCSI from BlueXP.

BlueXP provides several ways to create a new volume:

- Specify details for a new volume and let BlueXP handle the underlying data aggregates for you. [Learn more](#)
- Create a volume on a data aggregate of your choice. [Learn more](#)
- Create a volume on the second node in an HA configuration. [Learn more](#)

Before you begin

A few notes about volume provisioning:

- When you create an iSCSI volume, BlueXP automatically creates a LUN for you. We've made it simple by creating just one LUN per volume, so there's no management involved. After you create the volume, [use](#)

[the IQN to connect to the LUN from your hosts.](#)

- You can create additional LUNs from ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.
- If you want to use CIFS in AWS, you must have set up DNS and Active Directory. For details, refer to [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS](#).
- If your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature, you might want to [learn more about what happens when you create a volume](#).

Create a volume

The most common way to create a volume is to specify the type of volume that you need and then BlueXP handles the disk allocation for you. But you also have the option to choose the specific aggregate on which you want to create the volume.

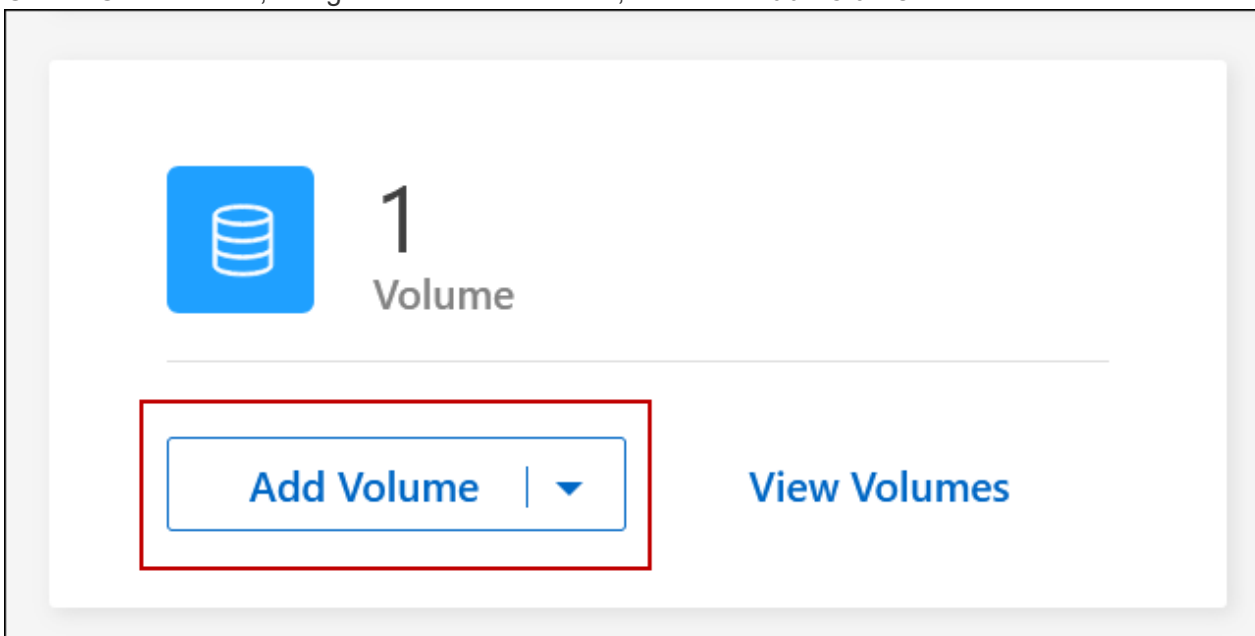
Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system on which you want to provision a FlexVol volume.
3. Create a new volume by letting BlueXP handle the disk allocation for you, or choose a specific aggregate for the volume.

Choosing a specific aggregate is recommended only if you have a good understanding of the data aggregates on your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

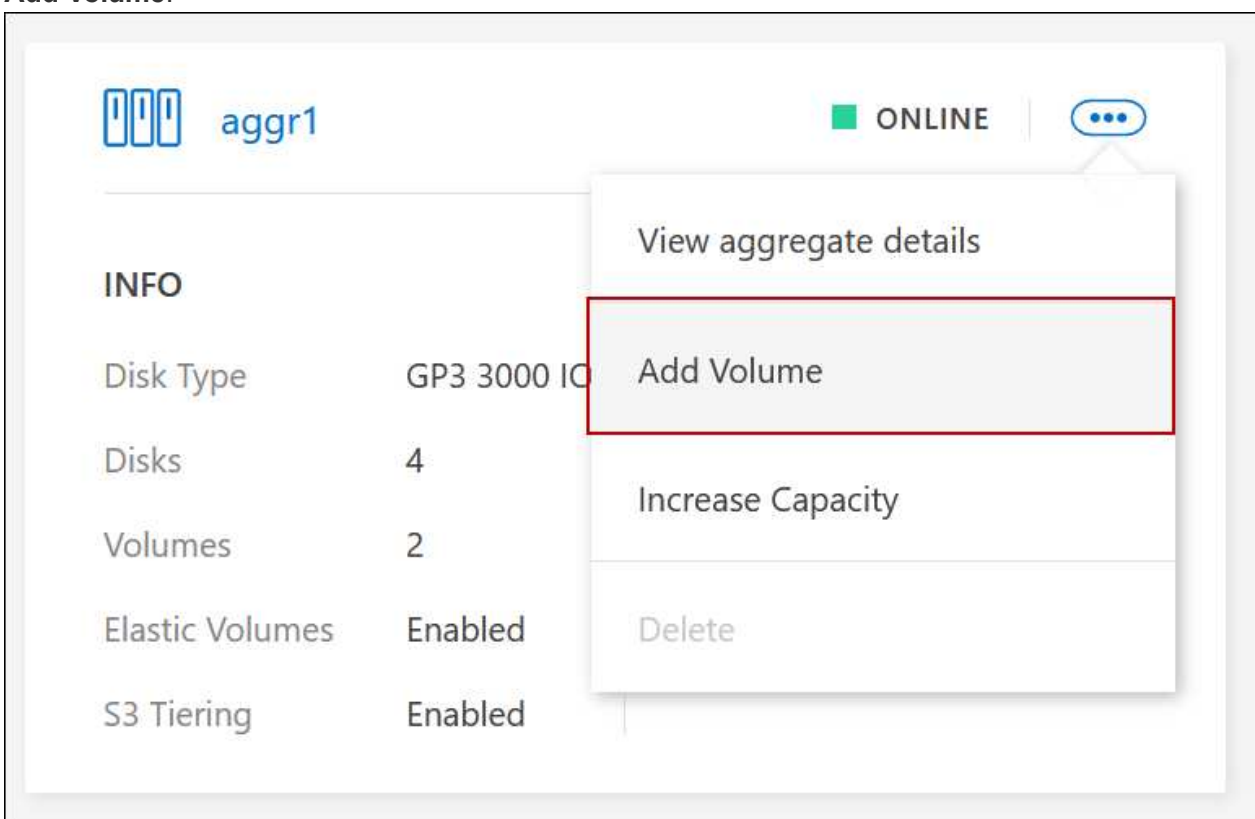
Any aggregate

On the Overview tab, navigate to the Volumes tile, and click **Add Volume**.



Specific aggregate

On the Aggregates tab, navigate to the desired aggregate tile. Click the menu icon, and then click **Add Volume**.



4. Follow the steps in the wizard to create the volume.
 - a. **Details, Protection, and Tags:** Enter basic details about the volume and select a Snapshot policy.

Some of the fields on this page are self-explanatory. The following list describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Volume Name	The identifiable name you can enter for the new volume.
Volume Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Storage VM (SVM)	A storage VM is a virtual machine running within ONTAP that provides storage and data services to your clients. You might know this as an SVM or a vserver. Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured with one storage VM by default, but some configurations support additional storage VMs. You can specify the Storage VM for the new volume.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.

- b. **Protocol:** Choose a protocol for the volume (NFS, CIFS, or iSCSI) and then provide the required information.

If you select CIFS and a server isn't set up, BlueXP prompts you to set up CIFS connectivity after you click **Next**.

[Learn about supported client protocols and versions.](#)

The following sections describe fields for which you might need guidance. The descriptions are organized by protocol.

NFS

Access control

Choose a custom export policy to make the volume available to clients.

Export policy

Defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, BlueXP enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.

CIFS

Permissions and users/groups

Enables you to control the level of access to an SMB share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.

DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address

The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.

Active Directory Domain to join

The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.

Credentials authorized to join the domain

The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.

CIFS server NetBIOS name

A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.

Organizational Unit

The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.

- To configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, enter **OU=Computers,OU=corp** in this field.

DNS Domain

The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.

NTP Server

Select **Use Active Directory Domain** to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. For information, refer to the [BlueXP automation docs](#).

Note that you can configure an NTP server only when creating a CIFS server. It's not configurable after you create the CIFS server.

iSCSI

LUN

iSCSI storage targets are called LUNs (logical units) and are presented to hosts as standard block devices. When you create an iSCSI volume, BlueXP automatically creates a LUN for you. We've made it simple by creating just one LUN per volume, so there's no management involved. After you create the volume, [use the IQN to connect to the LUN from your hosts](#).

Initiator group

Initiator groups (igroups) specify which hosts can access specified LUNs on the storage system

Host initiator (IQN)

iSCSI targets connect to the network through standard Ethernet network adapters (NICs), TCP offload engine (TOE) cards with software initiators, converged network adapters (CNAs) or dedicated host bus adapters (HBAs) and are identified by iSCSI qualified names (IQNs).

- c. **Disk Type:** Choose an underlying disk type for the volume based on your performance needs and cost requirements.

- [Sizing your system in AWS](#)

- d. **Usage Profile & Tiering Policy:** Choose whether to enable or disable storage efficiency features on the volume and then select a [volume tiering policy](#).

ONTAP includes several storage efficiency features that can reduce the total amount of storage that you need. NetApp storage efficiency features provide the following benefits:

Thin provisioning

Presents more logical storage to hosts or users than you actually have in your physical storage pool. Instead of preallocating storage space, storage space is allocated dynamically to each volume as data is written.

Deduplication

Improves efficiency by locating identical blocks of data and replacing them with references to a single shared block. This technique reduces storage capacity requirements by eliminating redundant blocks of data that reside in the same volume.

Compression

Reduces the physical capacity required to store data by compressing data within a volume on primary, secondary, and archive storage.

- e. **Review:** Review details about the volume and then click **Add**.

Result

BlueXP creates the volume on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

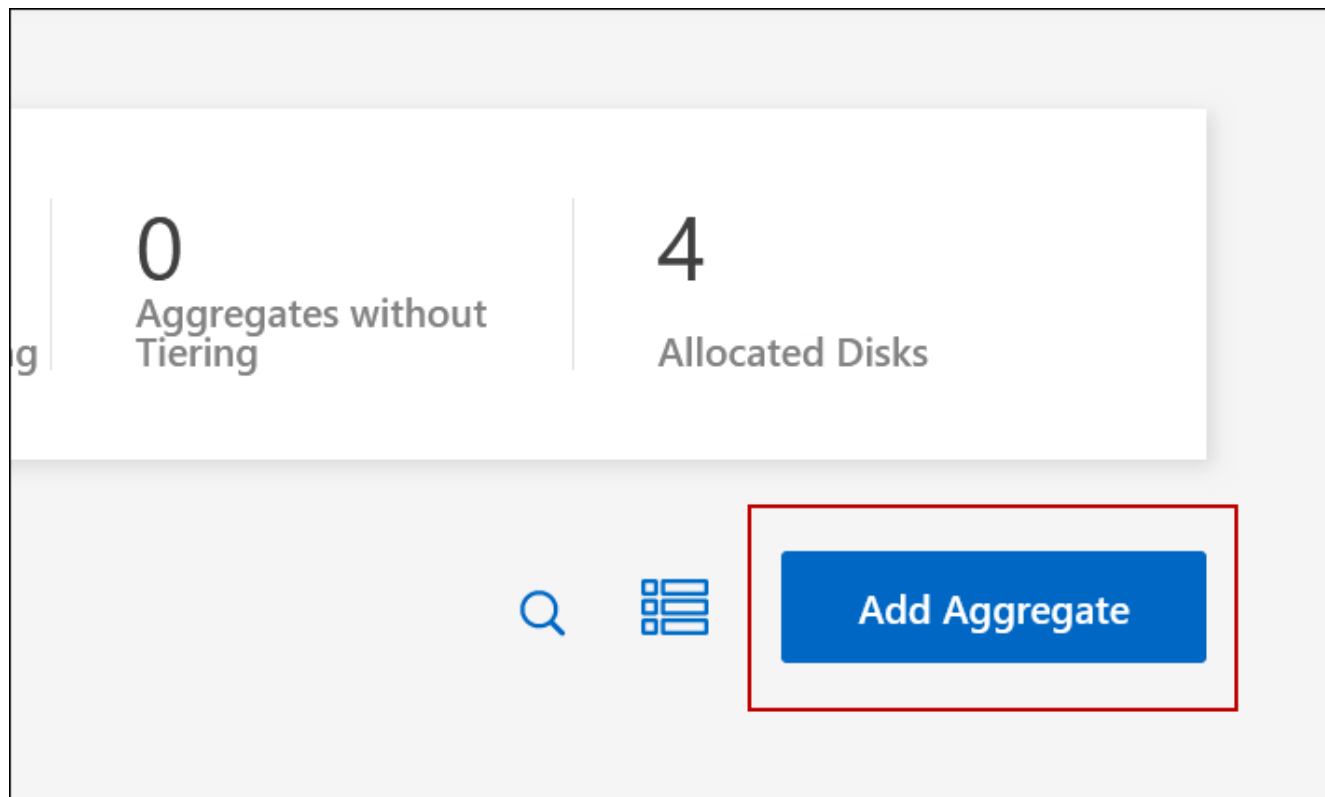
Create a volume on the second node in an HA configuration

By default, BlueXP creates volumes on the first node in an HA configuration. If you need an active-active configuration, in which both nodes serve data to clients, you must create aggregates and volumes on the second node.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.

2. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage aggregates.
3. On the Aggregates tab, click **Add Aggregate**.
4. From the *Add Aggregate* screen, create the aggregate.



5. For Home Node, choose the second node in the HA pair.
6. After BlueXP creates the aggregate, select it and then click **Create volume**.
7. Enter details for the new volume, and then click **Create**.

Result

BlueXP creates the volume on the second node in the HA pair.



For HA pairs deployed in multiple AWS Availability Zones, you must mount the volume to clients by using the floating IP address of the node on which the volume resides.

After you create a volume

If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.

If you want to apply quotas to volumes, you must use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI. Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Manage volumes on Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems

BlueXP enables you to manage volumes and CIFS servers. It also prompts you to move volumes to avoid capacity issues.

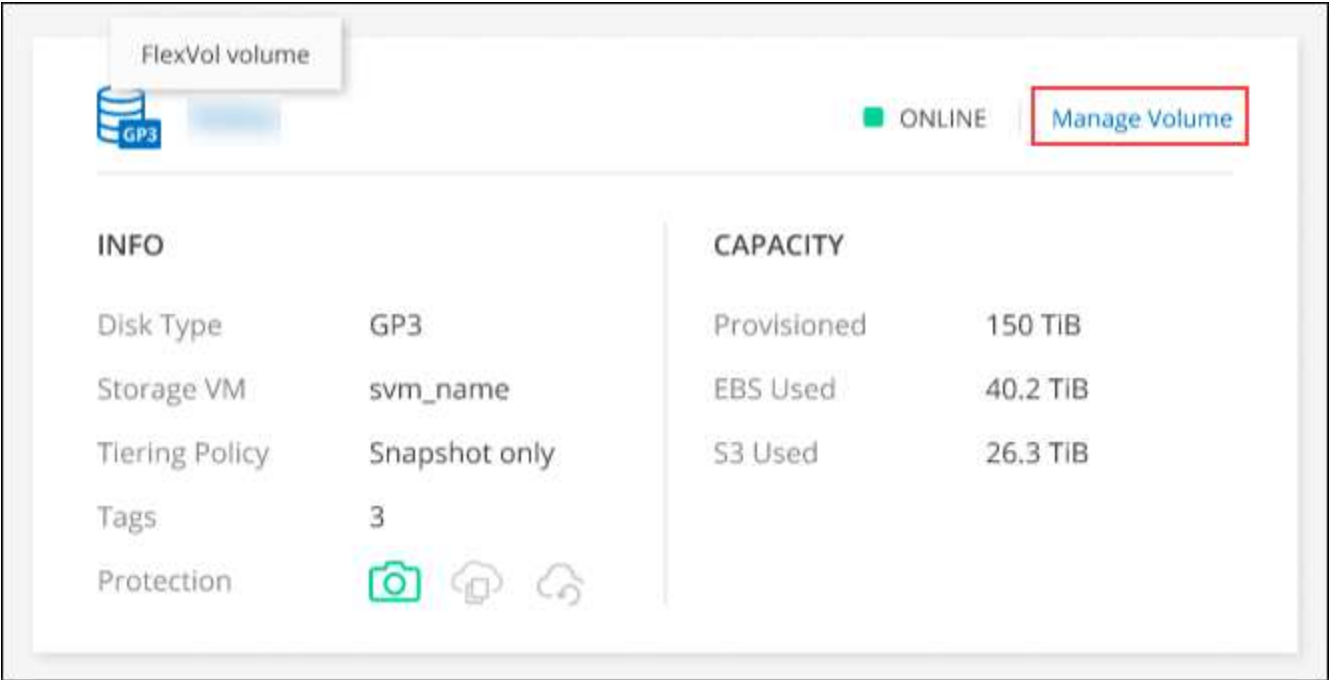
You can manage volumes in BlueXP Standard View or through ONTAP System Manager that is included within BlueXP for advanced volume management. The Standard View provides a limited set of options to modify your volumes. System Manager provides advanced level of management, such as cloning, resizing, changing settings for anti-ransomware, analytics, protection, and activity tracking, and moving volumes across tiers. For information, refer to [Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP using System Manager](#).

Manage volumes

By using the Standard View of BlueXP, you can manage volumes according to your storage needs. You can view, edit, clone, restore, and delete volumes.



Steps


- 1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
- 2. On the Canvas page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage volumes.
- 3. In the working environment, click the **Volumes** tab.



- 4. On the Volumes tab, navigate to the desired volume title and then click **Manage volume** to access the Manage Volumes right-side panel.

Task	Action
View information about a volume	Under Volume Actions in the Manage volumes panel, click View volume details .
Get the NFS mount command	<div>a. Under Volume Actions in the Manage volumes panel, click Mount Command.</div> <div>b. Click Copy.</div>

Task	Action
Clone a volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Volume Actions in the Manage volumes panel, click Clone the volume. Modify the clone name as needed, and then click Clone. <p>This process creates a FlexClone volume. A FlexClone volume is a writable, point-in-time copy that is space-efficient because it uses a small amount of space for metadata, and then only consumes additional space as data is changed or added.</p> <p>To learn more about FlexClone volumes, refer to the ONTAP 9 Logical Storage Management Guide.</p>
Edit a volume (read-write volumes only)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Volume Actions in the Manage volumes panel, click Edit volume settings Modify the volume's Snapshot policy, NFS protocol version, NFS access control list (export policy), or share permissions, and then click Apply. <div>  <p>If you need custom Snapshot policies, you can create them by using ONTAP System Manager.</p> </div>
Delete a volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Volume Actions in the Manage volumes panel, click Delete the volume. Under the Delete Volume window, enter the name of the volume you want to delete. Click Delete again to confirm.
Create a Snapshot copy on demand	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Protection Actions in the Manage Volumes panel, click Create a Snapshot copy. Change the name, if needed, and then click Create.
Restore data from a Snapshot copy to a new volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Protection Actions in the Manage Volumes panel, click Restore from Snapshot copy. Select a Snapshot copy, enter a name for the new volume, and then click Restore.
Change the underlying disk type	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Advanced Actions in the Manage Volumes panel, click Change Disk Type. Select the disk type, and then click Change. <div>  <p>BlueXP moves the volume to an existing aggregate that uses the selected disk type or it creates a new aggregate for the volume.</p> </div>


Task	Action
Change the tiering policy	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under Advanced Actions in the Manage Volumes panel, click Change Tiering Policy. Select a different policy and click Change. <div>  <p>BlueXP moves the volume to an existing aggregate that uses the selected disk type with tiering, or it creates a new aggregate for the volume.</p> </div>
Delete a volume	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select a volume, and then click Delete. Type the name of the volume in the dialog. Click Delete again to confirm.

Resize a volume

By default, a volume automatically grows to a maximum size when it's out of space. The default value is 1,000, which means the volume can grow to 11 times its size. This value is configurable in the Connector's settings.

If you need to resize your volume, you can do it from ONTAP System Manager in BlueXP.

Steps

- Click the System Manager view to resize a volume through ONTAP System Manager. Refer to [How to get started](#).
- From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Volumes**.
- From the list of volumes, identify the one that you should resize.
- Click the options icon .
- Select **Resize**.
- On the **Resize Volume** screen, edit the capacity and Snapshot reserve percentage as required. You can compare the existing, available space with the modified capacity.
- Click **Save**.

Resize volume ✕

CAPACITY

25

GiB

SNAPSHOT RESERVE %

1

Existing	New
DATA SPACE	DATA SPACE
20 GiB	24.75 GiB
SNAPSHOT RESERVE	SNAPSHOT RESERVE
0 Bytes	256 MiB

Cancel
Save

Be sure to take your system's capacity limits into consideration as you resize volumes. Go to the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) for more information.

Modify the CIFS server

If you change your DNS servers or Active Directory domain, you need to modify the CIFS server in Cloud Volumes ONTAP so that it can continue to serve storage to clients.

Steps

1. From the Overview tab of the working environment, click the Feature tab under the right-side panel.
2. Under the CIFS Setup field, click the **pencil icon** to display the CIFS Setup window.
3. Specify settings for the CIFS server:

Task	Action
Select Storage VM (SVM)	Selecting the Cloud Volume ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM) displays it's configured CIFS information.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.

Task	Action
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	<p>The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server.</p> <p>The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.</p>
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	<p>The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.

4. Click **Set**.

Result

Cloud Volumes ONTAP updates the CIFS server with the changes.

Move a volume

Move volumes for capacity utilization, improved performance, and to satisfy service-level agreements.

You can move a volume in ONTAP System Manager by selecting a volume and the destination aggregate, starting the volume move operation, and optionally monitoring the volume move job. When using System Manager, a volume move operation finishes automatically.

Steps

1. Use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI to move the volumes to the aggregate.

In most situations, you can use System Manager to move volumes.

For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP 9 Volume Move Express Guide](#).

Move a volume when BlueXP displays an Action Required message

BlueXP might display an Action Required message that says moving a volume is necessary to avoid capacity issues, but that you need to correct the issue yourself. If this happens, you need to identify how to correct the issue and then move one or more volumes.



BlueXP displays these Action Required messages when an aggregate has reached 90% used capacity. If data tiering is enabled, the messages display when an aggregate has reached 80% used capacity. By default, 10% free space is reserved for data tiering. [Learn more about the free space ratio for data tiering](#).

Steps

1. [Identify how to correct capacity issues](#).

2. Based on your analysis, move volumes to avoid capacity issues:
 - [Move volumes to another system to avoid capacity issues.](#)
 - [Move volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues.](#)

Identify how to correct capacity issues

If BlueXP can't provide recommendations for moving a volume to avoid capacity issues, you must identify the volumes that you need to move and whether you should move them to another aggregate on the same system or to another system.

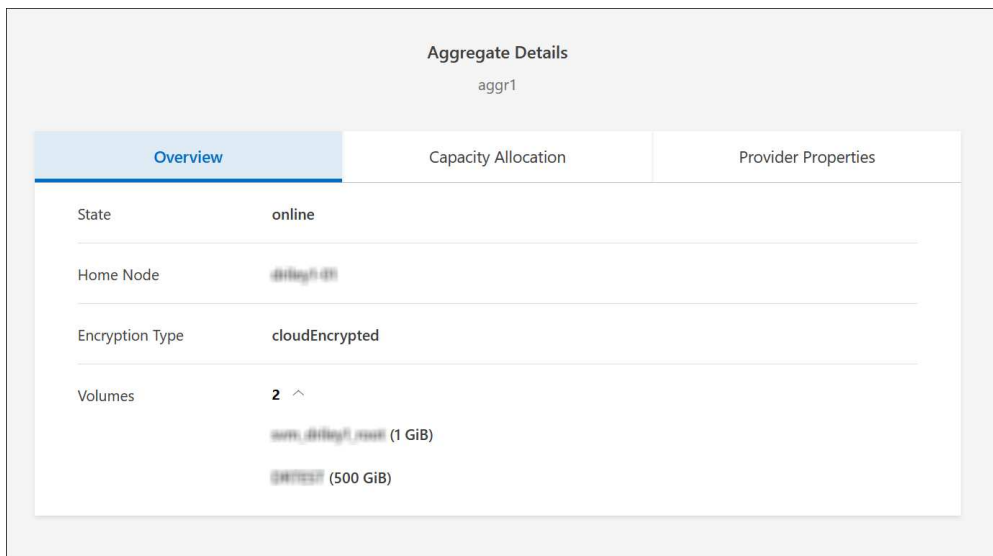
Steps

1. View the advanced information in the Action Required message to identify the aggregate that has reached its capacity limit.

For example, the advanced information should say something similar to the following: Aggregate aggr1 has reached its capacity limit.

2. Identify one or more volumes to move out of the aggregate:
 - a. In the working environment, click the **Aggregates** tab.
 - b. Navigate to the desired aggregate tile, and then click the ... (ellipses icon) > **View aggregate details**.
 - c. Under the Overview tab of the Aggregate Details screen, review the size of each volume and choose one or more volumes to move out of the aggregate.

You should choose volumes that are large enough to free space in the aggregate so that you avoid additional capacity issues in the future.



3. If the system has not reached the disk limit, you should move the volumes to an existing aggregate or a new aggregate on the same system.

For information, refer to [Move volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues.](#)

4. If the system has reached the disk limit, do any of the following:
 - a. Delete any unused volumes.
 - b. Rearrange volumes to free space on an aggregate.

For information, refer to [Move volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues](#).

- c. Move two or more volumes to another system that has space.

For information, refer to [Move volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues](#).

Move volumes to another system to avoid capacity issues

You can move one or more volumes to another Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to avoid capacity issues. You might need to do this if the system reached its disk limit.

About this task

You can follow the steps in this task to correct the following Action Required message:

Moving a volume is necessary to avoid capacity issues; however, BlueXP cannot perform this action for you because the system has reached the disk limit.

Steps

1. Identify a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that has available capacity, or deploy a new system.
2. Drag and drop the source working environment on the target working environment to perform a one-time data replication of the volume.

For information, refer to [Replicating data between systems](#).

3. Go to the Replication Status page, and then break the SnapMirror relationship to convert the replicated volume from a data protection volume to a read/write volume.

For information, refer to [Managing data replication schedules and relationships](#).

4. Configure the volume for data access.

For information about configuring a destination volume for data access, refer to the [ONTAP 9 Volume Disaster Recovery Express Guide](#).

5. Delete the original volume.

For information, refer to [Manage volumes](#).

Move volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues

You can move one or more volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues.

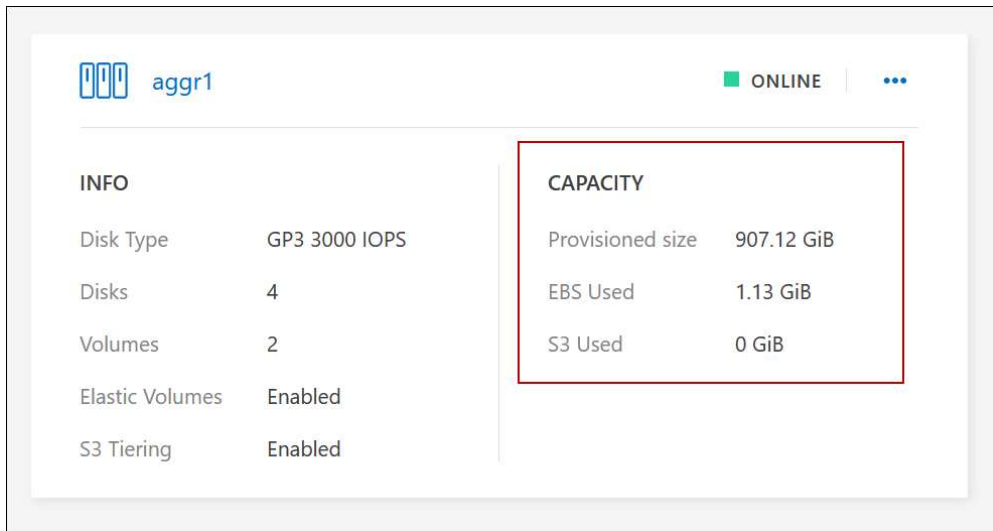
About this task

You can follow the steps in this task to correct the following Action Required message:

Moving two or more volumes is necessary to avoid capacity issues; however, BlueXP cannot perform this action for you.

Steps

1. Verify whether an existing aggregate has available capacity for the volumes that you need to move:
 - a. In the working environment, click the **Aggregates** tab.
 - b. Navigate to the desired aggregate tile, and then click the ... (**ellipses icon**) > **View aggregate details**.
 - c. Under the aggregate tile, view the available capacity (provisioned size minus used aggregate capacity).



2. If needed, add disks to an existing aggregate:
 - a. Select the aggregate, then click the ... (**ellipses icon**) > **Add Disks**.
 - b. Select the number of disks to add, and then click **Add**.
3. If no aggregates have available capacity, create a new aggregate.

For information, refer to [Creating aggregates](#).

4. Use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI to move the volumes to the aggregate.
5. In most situations, you can use System Manager to move volumes.

For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP 9 Volume Move Express Guide](#).

Reasons why a volume move might perform slowly

Moving a volume might take longer than you expect if any of the following conditions are true for Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- The volume is a clone.
- The volume is a parent of a clone.
- The source or destination aggregate has a single Throughput Optimized HDD (st1) disk.
- One of the aggregates uses an older naming scheme for objects. Both aggregates have to use the same name format.

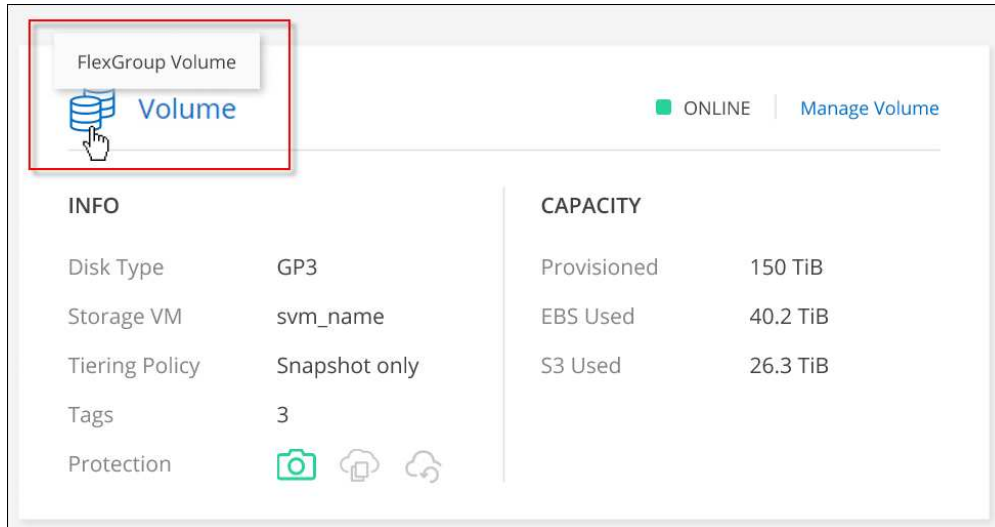
An older naming scheme is used if data tiering was enabled on an aggregate in the 9.4 release or earlier.

- The encryption settings don't match on the source and destination aggregates, or a rekey is in progress.
- The *-tiering-policy* option was specified on the volume move to change the tiering policy.

- The `-generate-destination-key` option was specified on the volume move.

View FlexGroup Volumes

You can view FlexGroup volumes created through ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI directly through the Volumes tab within BlueXP. Identical to the information provided for FlexVol volumes, BlueXP provides detailed information for created FlexGroup volumes through a dedicated Volumes tile. Under the Volumes tile, you can identify each FlexGroup volume group through the icon's hover text. Additionally, you can identify and sort FlexGroup volumes under the volumes list view through the Volume Style column.



Currently, you can only view existing FlexGroup volumes under BlueXP. The ability to create FlexGroup volumes in BlueXP is not available but planned for a future release.

Tier inactive Cloud Volumes ONTAP data to a low-cost object storage

You can reduce storage costs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP by combining an SSD or HDD performance tier for hot data with an object storage capacity tier for inactive data. Data tiering is powered by FabricPool technology. For a high-level overview, refer to [Data tiering overview](#).

To set up data tiering, you need to do the following:

1

Choose a supported configuration

Most configurations are supported. If you have a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system running the most recent version, then you are good to go. [Learn more](#).

2

Ensure connectivity between Cloud Volumes ONTAP and object storage

- For AWS, you'll need a VPC Endpoint to S3. [Learn more](#).

3

Ensure that you have an aggregate with tiering enabled

Data tiering should be enabled on an aggregate to enable it on a volume. You should be aware of the

requirements for new volumes and for existing volumes. [Learn more](#).

4

Choose a tiering policy when creating, modifying, or replicating a volume

BlueXP prompts you to choose a tiering policy when you create, modify, or replicate a volume.

- [Tier data from read-write volumes](#)
- [Tier data from data protection volumes](#)

What's not required for data tiering?

- You don't need to install a feature license to enable data tiering.
- You don't need to create an object store for the capacity tier. BlueXP does that for you.
- You don't need to enable data tiering at the system level.



BlueXP creates an object store for cold data when it creates the system, [as long as there are no connectivity or permissions issues](#). After that, you just need to enable data tiering on volumes (and in some cases, [on aggregates](#)).

Configurations that support data tiering

You can enable data tiering when using specific configurations and features.

Support in AWS

- Data tiering is supported in AWS beginning with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.2.
- The performance tier can be General Purpose SSDs (gp3 or gp2) or Provisioned IOPS SSDs (io1).



We do not recommend tiering data to object storage when using Throughput Optimized HDDs (st1).

- The inactive data is tiered to Amazon S3 buckets. Tiering to other providers is not supported.

Feature interoperability

- Data tiering is supported with encryption technologies.
- Thin provisioning must be enabled on volumes.

Requirements

Depending on your cloud provider, certain connections and permissions must be set up so that Cloud Volumes ONTAP can tier cold data to object storage.

Requirements to tier cold data to AWS S3

Ensure that Cloud Volumes ONTAP has a connection to S3. The best way to provide that connection is by creating a VPC Endpoint to the S3 service. For instructions, refer to the [AWS Documentation: Creating a Gateway Endpoint](#).

When you create the VPC Endpoint, be sure to select the region, VPC, and route table that corresponds to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You must also modify the security group to add an outbound HTTPS rule that

enables traffic to the S3 endpoint. Otherwise, Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot connect to the S3 service.

If you experience any issues, refer to [AWS Support Knowledge Center: Why can't I connect to an S3 bucket using a gateway VPC endpoint?](#).

Enable data tiering after implementing the requirements

BlueXP creates an object store for cold data when the system is created, as long as there are no connectivity or permissions issues. If you didn't implement the requirements listed above until after you created the system, then you'll need to manually enable tiering through the API or ONTAP System Manager, which creates the object store.



The ability to enable tiering through the BlueXP user interface will be available in a future Cloud Volumes ONTAP release.

Ensure that tiering is enabled on aggregates

Data tiering must be enabled on an aggregate in order to enable data tiering on a volume. You should be aware of the requirements for new volumes and for existing volumes.

- **New volumes**

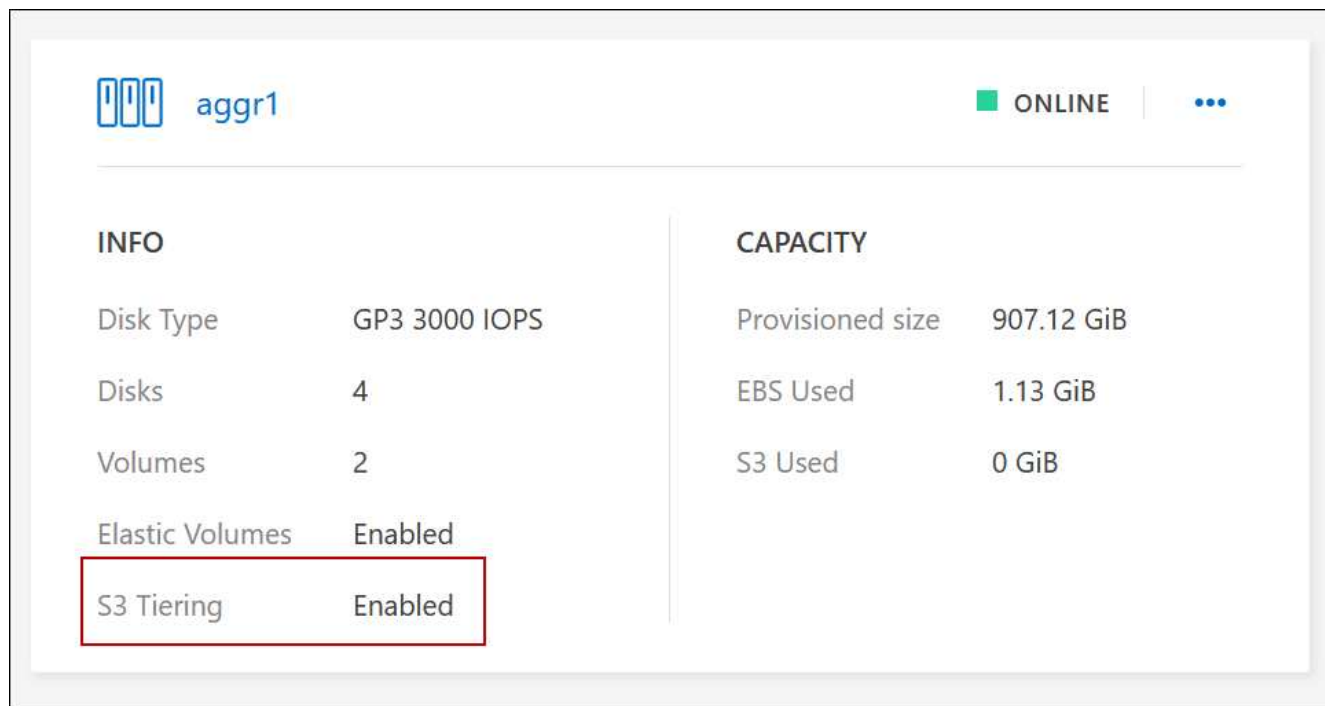
If you're enabling data tiering on a new volume, then you don't need to worry about enabling data tiering on an aggregate. BlueXP creates the volume on an existing aggregate that has tiering enabled, or it creates a new aggregate for the volume if a data tiering-enabled aggregate doesn't already exist.

- **Existing volumes**

To enable data tiering on an existing volume, ensure it is enabled on the underlying aggregate. If data tiering isn't enabled on the existing aggregate, then you'll need to use ONTAP System Manager to attach an existing aggregate to the object store.

Steps to confirm whether tiering is enabled on an aggregate

1. Open the working environment in BlueXP.
2. Click the Aggregates tab.
3. Navigate to the desired tile and verify whether tiering is enabled or disabled on the aggregate.



Steps to enable tiering on an aggregate

1. In ONTAP System Manager, click **Storage > Tiers**.
2. Click the action menu for the aggregate and select **Attach Cloud Tiers**.
3. Select the cloud tier to attach and click **Save**.

What's next?

You can now enable data tiering on new and existing volumes, as explained in the next section.

Tier data from read-write volumes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can tier inactive data on read-write volumes to cost-effective object storage, freeing up the performance tier for hot data.

Steps

1. In Volumes tab under the working environment, create a new volume or change the tier of an existing volume:

Task	Action
Create a new volume	Click Add New Volume .
Modify an existing volume	Select the desired volume tile, click Manage volume to access the Manage Volumes right-side panel, and then click Advanced actions and Change tiering policy under the right panel.

2. Select a tiering policy.

For a description of these policies, refer to [Data tiering overview](#).

Example

BlueXP creates a new aggregate for the volume if a data tiering-enabled aggregate does not already exist.

Tier data from data protection volumes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can tier data from a data protection volume to a capacity tier. If you activate the destination volume, the data gradually moves to the performance tier as it is read.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, select the working environment that contains the source volume, and then drag it to the working environment to which you want to replicate the volume.
3. Follow the prompts until you reach the tiering page and enable data tiering to object storage.

Example



S3 Tiering

What are storage tiers?

☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Note: If you enable S3 tiering, thin provisioning must be enabled on volumes created in this aggregate.

For help with replicating data, refer to [Replicating data to and from the cloud](#).

Change the storage class for tiered data

After you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can reduce your storage costs by changing the storage class for inactive data that hasn't been accessed for 30 days. The access costs are higher if you do access the data, so you must take that into consideration before you change the storage class.

The storage class for tiered data is system wide—it's not per volume.

For information about supported storage classes, refer to [Data tiering overview](#).

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon and then click **Storage Classes** or **Blob Storage Tiering**.
2. Choose a storage class and then click **Save**.

Change the free space ratio for data tiering

The free space ratio for data tiering defines how much free space is required on Cloud Volumes ONTAP SSDs/HDDs when tiering data to object storage. The default setting is 10% free space, but you can tweak the setting based on your requirements.

For example, you might choose less than 10% free space to ensure that you are utilizing the purchased capacity. BlueXP can then purchase additional disks for you when additional capacity is required (up until you reach the disk limit for the aggregate).

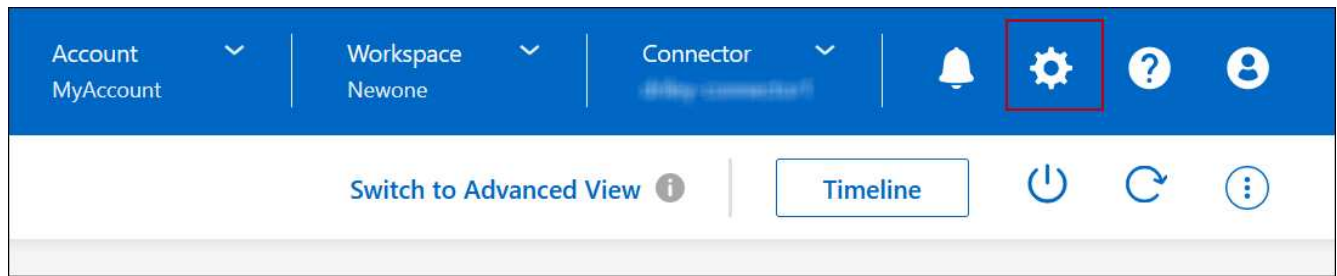


If there isn't sufficient space, then Cloud Volumes ONTAP can't move the data and you might experience performance degradation. Any change should be done with caution. If you're unsure, reach out to NetApp Support for guidance.

The ratio is important for disaster recovery scenarios because as data is read from the object store, Cloud Volumes ONTAP moves the data to SSDs/HDDs to provide better performance. If there isn't sufficient space, then Cloud Volumes ONTAP can't move the data. Take this into consideration when changing the ratio so that you can meet your business requirements.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the BlueXP console, click the **Settings** icon, and select **Cloud Volumes ONTAP Settings**.



2. Under **Capacity**, click **Aggregate Capacity Thresholds - Free Space Ratio for Data Tiering**.
3. Change the free space ratio based on your requirements and click **Save**.

Change the cooling period for the auto tiering policy

If you enabled data tiering on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP volume using the *auto* tiering policy, you can adjust the default cooling period based on your business needs. This action is supported using ONTAP CLI and API only.

The cooling period is the number of days that user data in a volume must remain inactive before it is considered "cold" and moved to object storage.

The default cooling period for the auto tiering policy is 31 days. You can change the cooling period as follows:

- 9.8 or later: 2 days to 183 days
- 9.7 or earlier: 2 days to 63 days

Step

1. Use the *minimumCoolingDays* parameter with your API request when creating a volume or modifying an existing volume.

Remove an S3 bucket on decommissioning a working environment

You can delete an S3 bucket with the data tiered from a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment when you decommission the environment.

You can delete the S3 bucket only if:

- The Cloud Volume ONTAP working environment is deleted from BlueXP.
- All objects are deleted from the bucket and the S3 bucket is empty.

When you decommission a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, the S3 bucket that was created for the environment is not deleted automatically. Instead, it remains in an orphaned state to prevent any accidental data loss. You can delete the objects in the bucket, then remove the S3 bucket itself, or keep it for later use.

Refer to [ONTAP CLI: vservers object-store-server bucket delete](#).

Connect to a LUN on Cloud Volumes ONTAP from your host system

When you create an iSCSI volume, BlueXP automatically creates a LUN for you. We've made it simple by creating just one LUN per volume, so there's no management involved. After you create the volume, use the IQN to connect to the LUN from your hosts.

Note the following:

- BlueXP's automatic capacity management doesn't apply to LUNs. When BlueXP creates a LUN, it disables the autogrow feature.
- You can create additional LUNs from ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage volumes.
3. In the working environment, click the **Volumes** tab.
4. On the Volumes tab, navigate to the desired volume title and then click **Manage volume** to access the Manage Volumes right-side panel.
5. Click **Target iQN**.
6. Click **Copy** to copy the iQN name.
7. Set up an iSCSI connection from the host to the LUN.
 - [ONTAP 9 iSCSI express configuration for Red Hat Enterprise Linux: Starting the iSCSI sessions with the target](#)
 - [ONTAP 9 iSCSI express configuration for Windows: Starting iSCSI sessions with the target](#)
 - [ONTAP SAN host configuration](#)

Accelerate data access with FlexCache volumes on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system

A FlexCache volume is a storage volume that caches SMB and NFS read data from an origin (or source) volume. Subsequent reads to the cached data result in faster access to that data.

You can use FlexCache volumes to speed up access to data or to offload traffic from heavily accessed volumes. FlexCache volumes help improve performance, especially when clients need to access the same data repeatedly, because the data can be served directly without having to access the origin volume. FlexCache volumes work well for system workloads that are read-intensive.

BlueXP provides management of FlexCache volumes with the [BlueXP volume caching](#) service.

You can also use the ONTAP CLI or ONTAP System Manager to create and manage FlexCache volumes:

- [FlexCache Volumes for Faster Data Access Power Guide](#)
- [Creating FlexCache volumes in System Manager](#)



Work with FlexCache when the origin is encrypted

When configuring FlexCache on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system where the origin volume is encrypted, additional steps are required, to ensure that the FlexCache volume can properly access and cache the encrypted data.

Before you begin

1. **Encryption setup:** Ensure that the source volume is fully encrypted and operational. For Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, this involves integrating with cloud-specific key management services. For AWS, this typically means using AWS Key Management Service (KMS). For information, refer to [Manage keys with AWS Key Management Service](#).
2. **Key management services:** Before creating a FlexCache volume, verify that the key management services are configured correctly on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. This configuration is essential for the FlexCache volume to decrypt the data from the origin volume.
3. **Licensing:** Confirm that a valid FlexCache license is available and activated on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
4. **ONTAP version:** Ensure that the ONTAP version of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system supports FlexCache with encrypted volumes. Refer to the latest [ONTAP release notes](#) or compatibility matrix for more information.
5. **Network Configuration:** Ensure that the network configuration allows for seamless communication between the origin volume and the FlexCache volume. This includes proper routing and DNS resolution in a cloud environment.

Steps

Create a FlexCache volume on your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system with an encrypted source volume. For detailed steps and additional considerations, refer to the following sections:

- [FlexCache Volumes for Faster Data Access Power Guide](#)

Aggregate administration

Create an aggregate for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems

You can create aggregates yourself or let BlueXP do it for you when it creates volumes. The benefit of creating aggregates yourself is that you can choose the underlying disk size, which enables you to size your aggregate for the capacity or the performance that you need.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from BlueXP. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance on which you want to manage aggregates.
3. On the Aggregates tab, click **Add Aggregate** and then specify details for the aggregate.

AWS

- If you're prompted to choose a disk type and disk size, refer to [Plan your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration in AWS](#).
- If you're prompted to enter the aggregate's capacity size, then you're creating an aggregate on a configuration that supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature. The following screenshot shows an example of a new aggregate comprised of gp3 disks.

The screenshot shows the AWS console interface for creating an aggregate. At the top, there are four steps: 1 Disk Type (active), 2 Aggregate details, 3 Tiering Data, and 4 Review. The main heading is 'Select Disk Type'. Below it, a 'Disk Type' dropdown menu is set to 'GP3 - General Purpose SSD Dynamic Performance'. A detailed box titled 'General Purpose SSD (gp3) Disk Properties' contains the following information:

- Description:** General purpose SSD volume that balances price and performance (performance level is independent of storage capacity)
- IOPS Value:** 12000
- Throughput MB/s:** 250

[Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

4. Click **Go**, and then click **Approve and Purchase**.

Manage aggregates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP clusters

Manage aggregates yourself by adding disks, viewing information about the aggregates, and by deleting them.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from BlueXP. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Before you begin

If you want to delete an aggregate, you must have first deleted the volumes in the aggregate.

About this task

If an aggregate is running out of space, you can move volumes to another aggregate by using ONTAP System Manager.

Steps


1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage aggregates.
3. In the working environment, click the **Aggregates** tab.
4. On the Aggregates tab, navigate to the desired title and then click the ... (ellipses icon).

The screenshot shows the ONTAP System Manager interface for an aggregate named 'aggr1'. The aggregate is in an 'ONLINE' state. The interface is divided into two main sections: 'INFO' and 'CAPACITY'. The 'INFO' section provides details about the aggregate's configuration, including disk type, number of disks, number of volumes, and whether elastic volumes and S3 tiering are enabled. The 'CAPACITY' section shows the aggregate's storage usage, including the total provisioned size and the amount of space used by EBS and S3.

INFO		CAPACITY	
Disk Type	GP3 3000 IOPS	Provisioned size	907.12 GiB
Disks	4	EBS Used	1.13 GiB
Volumes	2	S3 Used	0 GiB
Elastic Volumes	Enabled		
S3 Tiering	Enabled		

5. Manage your aggregates:

Task	Action
View information about an aggregate	Under the ... (ellipses icon) menu, click View aggregate details .
Create a volume on a specific aggregate	Under the ... (ellipses icon) menu, click Add volume .

Task	Action
Add disks to an aggregate	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under the ... (ellipses icon) menu, click Add disks. Select the number of disks that you want to add and click Add. <div>  All disks in an aggregate must be the same size. </div>
Increase the capacity of an aggregate that supports Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under the ... (ellipses icon) menu, click Increase capacity. Enter the additional capacity that you'd like to add and then click Increase. <p>Note that you must increase the capacity of the aggregate by a minimum of 256 GiB or 10% of the aggregate's size.</p> <p>For example, if you have a 1.77 TiB aggregate, 10% is 181 GiB. That's lower than 256 GiB, so the size of the aggregate must be increased by the 256 GiB minimum.</p>
Delete an aggregate	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select an aggregate tile that does not contain any volumes click the ... (ellipses icon) > Delete. Click Delete again to confirm.

Manage the Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate capacity on a Connector

Each Connector has settings that determines how it manages aggregate capacity for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

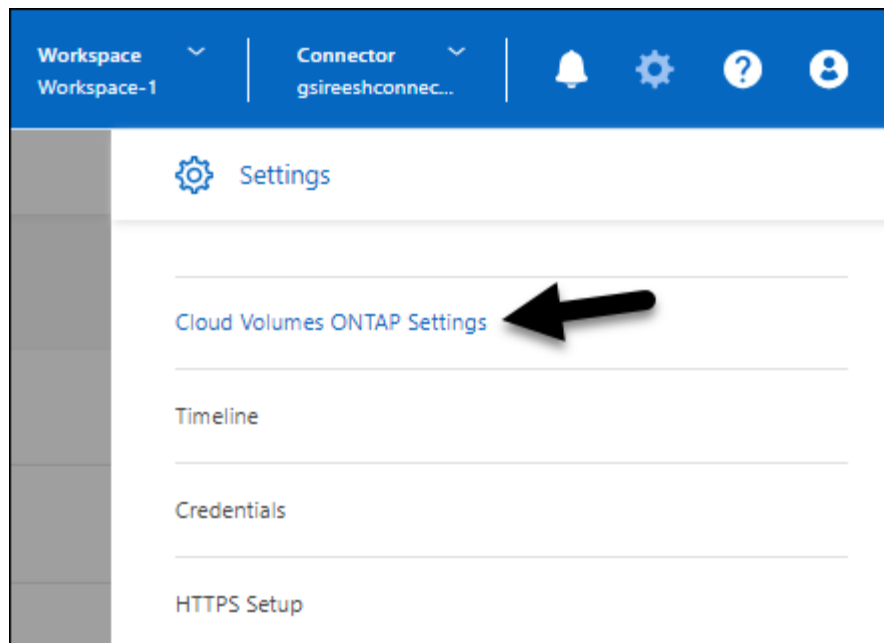
These settings affect all Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems managed by a Connector. If you have another Connector, it can be configured differently.

Required permissions

BlueXP Organization or Account admin privileges are required to modify Cloud Volumes ONTAP Settings.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the BlueXP console, click the Settings icon, and select **Cloud Volumes ONTAP Settings**.



2. Under **Capacity**, modify any of the following settings:

Capacity Management Mode

Choose whether BlueXP notifies you of storage capacity decisions or whether BlueXP automatically manages capacity requirements for you.

[Learn how Capacity Management Mode works.](#)

Aggregate Capacity Threshold - Free Space Ratio

This ratio is a key parameter in capacity management decisions, and understanding its impact is essential regardless of whether you are in an automatic or manual mode of capacity management. It is recommended to set this threshold with consideration of your specific storage needs and anticipated growth to maintain a balance between resource utilization and cost.

In the manual mode, if the free space ratio on an aggregate drops below the specified threshold, it triggers a notification, alerting you that you should take actions to address the low free space ratio. It is important to monitor these notifications and manually manage the aggregate capacity to avoid service disruption and ensure optimal performance.

The free space ratio is calculated as follows:

$$(\text{aggregate capacity} - \text{total used capacity on the aggregate}) / \text{aggregate capacity}$$

Refer to [Automatic capacity management](#) to learn how capacity is automatically managed in Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Aggregate Capacity Thresholds - Free Space Ratio for Data Tiering

Defines how much free space is required on the performance tier (disks) when tiering data to a capacity tier (object storage).

The ratio is important for disaster recovery scenarios. As data is read from the capacity tier, Cloud Volumes ONTAP moves data to the performance tier to provide better performance. If there isn't sufficient space, then Cloud Volumes ONTAP can't move the data.

3. Click **Save**.

Storage VM administration

Manage storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

A storage VM is a virtual machine running within ONTAP that provides storage and data services to your clients. You might know this as an *SVM* or a *vserver*. Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured with one storage VM by default, but some configurations support additional storage VMs.

Supported number of storage VMs

Multiple storage VMs are supported with certain configurations. Go to the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) to verify the supported number of storage VMs for your version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Work with multiple storage VMs

BlueXP supports any additional storage VMs that you create from ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

For example, the following image shows how you can choose a storage VM when you create a volume.

Details & Protection

Storage VM Name

svm_name1

Volume Name

Size (GiB)

Snapshot Policy

default

Default Policy

And the following image shows how you can choose a storage VM when replicating a volume to another system.

Destination Volume Name

volume_copy

Destination Storage VM Name

svm_name1

Destination Aggregate

Automatically select the best aggregate

Modify the name of the default storage VM

BlueXP automatically names the single storage VM that it creates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. From ONTAP System Manager, the ONTAP CLI, or API, you can modify the name of the storage VM if you have strict naming standards. For example, you might want the name to match how you name the storage VMs for your ONTAP clusters.

Manage data-serving storage VMs for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

A storage VM is a virtual machine running within ONTAP that provides storage and data services to your clients. You might know this as an *SVM* or a *vserver*. Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured with one storage VM by default, but some configurations support additional storage VMs.

To create additional data-serving storage VMs, you need to allocate IP addresses in AWS and then run ONTAP commands based on your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration.

Supported number of storage VMs

Multiple storage VMs are supported with specific Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations starting with the 9.7 release. Go to the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) to verify the supported number of storage VMs for your version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

All other Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations support one data-serving storage VM and one destination storage VM used for disaster recovery. You can activate the destination storage VM for data access if there's an outage on the source storage VM.

Verify limits for your configuration

Each EC2 instance supports a maximum number of private IPv4 addresses per network interface. You need to verify the limit before you allocate IP addresses in AWS for the new storage VM.

Steps

1. Go to the [Storage limits section in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#).

2. Identify the maximum number of IP addresses per interface for your instance type.
3. Make note of this number because you'll need it in the next section when you allocate IP addresses in AWS.

Allocate IP addresses in AWS

Private IPv4 addresses must be assigned to port e0a in AWS before you create LIFs for the new storage VM.

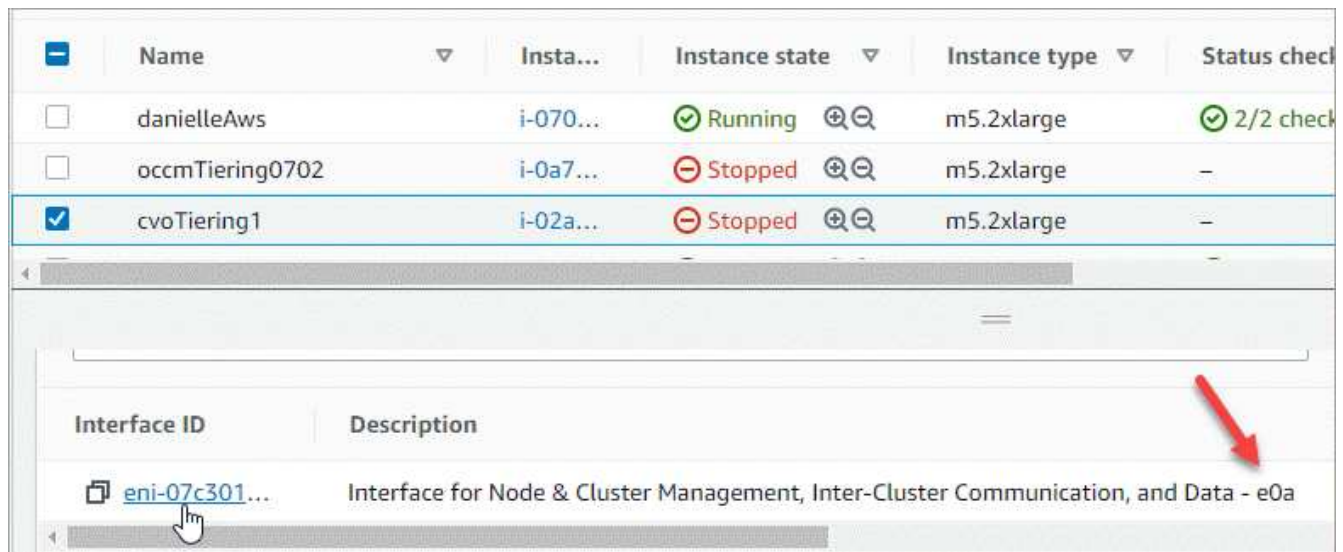
Note that an optional management LIF for a storage VM requires a private IP address on a single node system and on an HA pair in a single AZ. This management LIF provides a connection to management tools like SnapCenter.

Steps

1. Log in to AWS and open the EC2 service.
2. Select the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and click **Networking**.

If you're creating a storage VM on an HA pair, select node 1.

3. Scroll down to **Network interfaces** and click the **Interface ID** for port e0a.



4. Select the network interface and click **Actions > Manage IP addresses**.
5. Expand the list of IP addresses for e0a.
6. Verify the IP addresses:
 - a. Count the number of allocated IP addresses to confirm that the port has room for additional IPs.

You should have identified the maximum number of supported IP addresses per interface in the previous section of this page.

 - b. Optional: Go to the ONTAP CLI for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and run **network interface show** to confirm that each of these IP addresses are in use.

If an IP address isn't in use, then you can use it with the new storage VM.

7. Back in the AWS Console, click **Assign new IP address** to assign additional IP addresses based on the amount that you need for the new storage VM.

- Single node system: One unused secondary private IP is required.

An optional secondary private IP is required if you want to create a management LIF on the storage VM.

- HA pair in a single AZ: One unused secondary private IP is required on node 1.

An optional secondary private IP is required if you want to create a management LIF on the storage VM.

- HA pair in multiple AZs: One unused secondary private IP is required on each node.

8. If you're allocating the IP address on an HA pair in a single AZ, enable **Allow secondary private IPv4 addresses to be reassigned**.

9. Click **Save**.

10. If you have an HA pair in multiple AZs, then you'll need to repeat these steps for node 2.

Create a storage VM on a single node system

These steps create a new storage VM on a single node system. One private IP address is required to create a NAS LIF and another optional private IP address is needed if you want to create a management LIF.

Steps

1. Create the storage VM and a route to the storage VM.

```
vserver create -rootvolume-security-style unix -rootvolume root_svm_2  
-snapshot-policy default -vserver svm_2 -aggregate aggr1
```

```
network route create -destination 0.0.0.0/0 -vserver svm_2 -gateway  
subnet_gateway
```

2. Create a NAS LIF.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-data-files -home-port e0a -address private_ip_x -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_nas_2 -home-node cvo-node
```

Where *private_ip_x* is an unused secondary private IP on e0a.

3. Optional: Create a storage VM management LIF.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-management -home-port e0a -address private_ip_y -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_svm_mgmt_2 -home-node cvo-node
```

Where *private_ip_y* is another unused secondary private IP on e0a.

4. Assign one or more aggregates to the storage VM.

```
vserver add-aggregates -vserver svm_2 -aggregates aggr1,aggr2
```

This step is required because the new storage VM needs access to at least one aggregate before you can create volumes on the storage VM.

Create a storage VM on an HA pair in a single AZ

These steps create a new storage VM on an HA pair in a single AZ. One private IP address is required to create a NAS LIF and another optional private IP address is needed if you want to create a management LIF.

Both of these LIFs get allocated on node 1. The private IP addresses can move between nodes if failures occur.

Steps

1. Create the storage VM and a route to the storage VM.

```
vserver create -rootvolume-security-style unix -rootvolume root_svm_2  
-snapshot-policy default -vserver svm_2 -aggregate aggr1
```

```
network route create -destination 0.0.0.0/0 -vserver svm_2 -gateway  
subnet_gateway
```

2. Create a NAS LIF on node 1.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-data-files -home-port e0a -address private_ip_x -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_nas_2 -home-node cvo-node1
```

Where *private_ip_x* is an unused secondary private IP on e0a of cvo-node1. This IP address can be relocated to the e0a of cvo-node2 in case of takeover because the service policy default-data-files indicates that IPs can migrate to the partner node.

3. Optional: Create a storage VM management LIF on node 1.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-management -home-port e0a -address private_ip_y -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_svm_mgmt_2 -home-node cvo-node1
```

Where *private_ip_y* is another unused secondary private IP on e0a.

4. Assign one or more aggregates to the storage VM.

```
vserver add-aggregates -vserver svm_2 -aggregates aggr1,aggr2
```

This step is required because the new storage VM needs access to at least one aggregate before you can create volumes on the storage VM.

5. If you're running Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1 or later, modify the network service policies for the storage VM.

Modifying the services is required because it ensures that Cloud Volumes ONTAP can use the iSCSI LIF for outbound management connections.

```
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-nis-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-nis-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-nis-client
```

Create a storage VM on an HA pair in multiple AZs

These steps create a new storage VM on an HA pair in multiple AZs.

A *floating* IP address is required for a NAS LIF and is optional for a management LIF. These floating IP addresses don't require you to allocate private IPs in AWS. Instead, the floating IPs are automatically configured in the AWS route table to point to a specific node's ENI in the same VPC.

In order for floating IPs to work with ONTAP, a private IP address must be configured on every storage VM on each node. This is reflected in the steps below where an iSCSI LIF is created on node 1 and on node 2.

Steps

1. Create the storage VM and a route to the storage VM.

```
vserver create -rootvolume-security-style unix -rootvolume root_svm_2  
-snapshot-policy default -vserver svm_2 -aggregate aggr1
```

```
network route create -destination 0.0.0.0/0 -vserver svm_2 -gateway  
subnet_gateway
```

2. Create a NAS LIF on node 1.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-data-files -home-port e0a -address floating_ip -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_nas_floating_2 -home-node cvo-node1
```

- The floating IP address must be outside of the CIDR blocks for all VPCs in the AWS region in which you deploy the HA configuration. 192.168.209.27 is an example floating IP address. [Learn more about choosing a floating IP address.](#)
- `-service-policy default-data-files` indicates that IPs can migrate to the partner node.

3. Optional: Create a storage VM management LIF on node 1.

```
network interface create -auto-revert true -vserver svm_2 -service  
-policy default-management -home-port e0a -address floating_ip -netmask  
node1Mask -lif ip_svm_mgmt_2 -home-node cvo-node1
```

4. Create an iSCSI LIF on node 1.

```
network interface create -vserver svm_2 -service-policy default-data-  
blocks -home-port e0a -address private_ip -netmask node1Mask -lif  
ip_node1_iscsi_2 -home-node cvo-node1
```

- This iSCSI LIF is required to support LIF migration of the floating IPs in the storage VM. It doesn't have to be an iSCSI LIF, but it can't be configured to migrate between nodes.
- `-service-policy default-data-block` indicates that an IP address does not migrate between nodes.

- *private_ip* is an unused secondary private IP address on eth0 (e0a) of cvo_node1.

5. Create an iSCSI LIF on node 2.

```
network interface create -vserver svm_2 -service-policy default-data-  
blocks -home-port e0a -address private_ip -netmaskNode2Mask -lif  
ip_node2_iscsi_2 -home-node cvo-node2
```

- This iSCSI LIF is required to support LIF migration of the floating IPs in the storage VM. It doesn't have to be an iSCSI LIF, but it can't be configured to migrate between nodes.
- `-service-policy default-data-block` indicates that an IP address does not migrate between nodes.
- *private_ip* is an unused secondary private IP address on eth0 (e0a) of cvo_node2.

6. Assign one or more aggregates to the storage VM.

```
vserver add-aggregates -vserver svm_2 -aggregates aggr1,aggr2
```

This step is required because the new storage VM needs access to at least one aggregate before you can create volumes on the storage VM.

7. If you're running Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.1 or later, modify the network service policies for the storage VM.

Modifying the services is required because it ensures that Cloud Volumes ONTAP can use the iSCSI LIF for outbound management connections.


```

network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy remove-service -vserver <svm-name>
-policy default-data-files -service management-nis-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-blocks -service management-nis-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service data-fpolicy-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-ad-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-dns-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-ldap-client
network interface service-policy add-service -vserver <svm-name> -policy
default-data-iscsi -service management-nis-client

```

Set up storage VM disaster recovery for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

BlueXP does not offer setup or orchestration support for storage VM (SVM) disaster recovery. To perform these tasks, use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI.

If you set up SnapMirror SVM replication between two Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, the replication must be between two HA pair systems or two single node systems. You can't set up SnapMirror SVM replication between an HA pair and a single node system.

Refer to the following documents for the ONTAP CLI instructions.

- [SVM Disaster Recovery Preparation Express Guide](#)
- [SVM Disaster Recovery Express Guide](#)

Security and data encryption

Encrypt volumes on Cloud Volumes ONTAP with NetApp encryption solutions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) and NetApp Aggregate Encryption (NAE). NVE and NAE are software-based solutions that enable FIPS 140-2–compliant data-at-rest encryption of volumes. [Learn more about these encryption solutions.](#)

Both NVE and NAE are supported with an external key manager.

If you use NVE, you have the option to use your cloud provider's key vault to protect ONTAP encryption keys:

- AWS Key Management Service (beginning in 9.12.0)

New aggregates will have NAE enabled by default after you set up an external key manager. New volumes that aren't part of an NAE aggregate will have NVE enabled by default (for example, if you have existing aggregates that were created before setting up an external key manager).

Cloud Volumes ONTAP doesn't support onboard key management.

Before you begin

Your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system should be registered with NetApp Support. A NetApp Volume Encryption license is automatically installed on each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that is registered with NetApp Support.

- [Adding NetApp Support Site accounts to BlueXP](#)
- [Register pay-as-you-go systems](#)



BlueXP doesn't install the NVE license on systems that reside in the China region.

Steps

1. Review the list of supported key managers in the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#).



Search for the **Key Managers** solution.

2. [Connect to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI](#).
3. Configure external key management.
 - AWS: [AWS Key Management Service](#)

Manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP encryption keys with AWS Key Management Service

You can use [AWS's Key Management Service \(KMS\)](#) to protect your ONTAP encryption keys in an AWS-deployed application.

Key management with the AWS KMS can be enabled with the CLI or the ONTAP REST API.

When using the KMS, be aware that by default a data SVM's LIF is used to communicate with the cloud key management endpoint. A node management network is used to communicate with AWS's authentication

services. If the cluster network is not configured correctly, the cluster will not properly utilize the key management service.

Before you begin

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be running version 9.12.0 or later
- You must have installed the Volume Encryption (VE) license and
- You must have installed the Multi-tenant Encryption Key Management (MTEKM) license installed.
- You must be a cluster or SVM administrator
- You must have an active AWS subscription



You can only configure keys for a data SVM.

Configuration

AWS

1. You must create a [grant](#) for the AWS KMS key that will be used by the IAM role managing encryption. The IAM role must include a policy that allows the following operations:
 - DescribeKey
 - Encrypt
 - DecryptTo create a grant, refer to [AWS documentation](#).
2. [Add a policy to the appropriate IAM role](#). The policy should support the DescribeKey, Encrypt, and Decrypt operations.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP

1. Switch to your Cloud Volumes ONTAP environment.
2. Switch to the advanced privilege level:
`set -privilege advanced`
3. Enable the AWS key manager:
`security key-manager external aws enable -vserver data_svm_name -region AWS_region -key-id key_ID -encryption-context encryption_context`
4. When prompted, enter the secret key.
5. Confirm the AWS KMS was configured correctly:
`security key-manager external aws show -vserver svm_name`

Enable NetApp ransomware protection solutions for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. BlueXP enables you to implement two NetApp solutions for ransomware: Protection from common ransomware file extensions and Autonomous Ransomware Protection (ARP). These solutions provide effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation.









Protection from common ransomware file extensions

Available through BlueXP, the Ransomware Protection setting allows you to utilize the ONTAP FPolicy

functionality to guard against common ransomware file extension types.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the system you configure to ransomware protection.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Ransomware Protection**.

Information		Features
Working Environment Tags		Tags 
Scheduled Downtime		Off 
S3 Storage Classes	Standard-Infrequent Access 	
Instance Type		m5.xlarge 
Write Speed		Normal 
Ransomware Protection		Off 
Support Registration		Not Registered 
CIFs Setup		

3. Implement the NetApp solution for ransomware:

- Click **Activate Snapshot Policy**, if you have volumes that do not have a Snapshot policy enabled.

NetApp Snapshot technology provides the industry's best solution for ransomware remediation. The key to a successful recovery is restoring from uninfected backups. Snapshot copies are read-only, which prevents ransomware corruption. They can also provide the granularity to create images of a single file copy or a complete disaster recovery solution.

- b. Click **Activate FPolicy** to enable ONTAP's FPolicy solution, which can block file operations based on a file's extension.

This preventative solution improves protection from ransomware attacks by blocking common ransomware file types.

The default FPolicy scope blocks files that have the following extensions:

micro, encrypted, locked, crypto, crypt, crinf, r5a, XRNT, XTBL, R16M01D05, pzdc, good, LOL!, OMG!, RDM, RRK, encryptedRS, crjoker, EnCiPhErEd, LeChiffre



BlueXP creates this scope when you activate FPolicy on Cloud Volumes ONTAP. The list is based on common ransomware file types. You can customize the blocked file extensions by using the `vserver fpolicy policy scope` commands from the Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI.

Ransomware Protection

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. The NetApp solution for ransomware provides effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation. [Learn More](#)

1 Enable Snapshot Copy Protection

50 %
Protection

1 Volumes without a Snapshot Policy

To protect your data, activate the default Snapshot policy for these volumes

Activate Snapshot Policy

2 Block Ransomware File Extensions

ONTAP's native FPolicy configuration monitors and blocks file operations based on a file's extension.

View Denied File Names

Activate FPolicy

Autonomous Ransomware Protection

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the Autonomous Ransomware Protection (ARP) feature, which performs analyses on workloads to proactively detect and warn about abnormal activity that might indicate a ransomware attack.

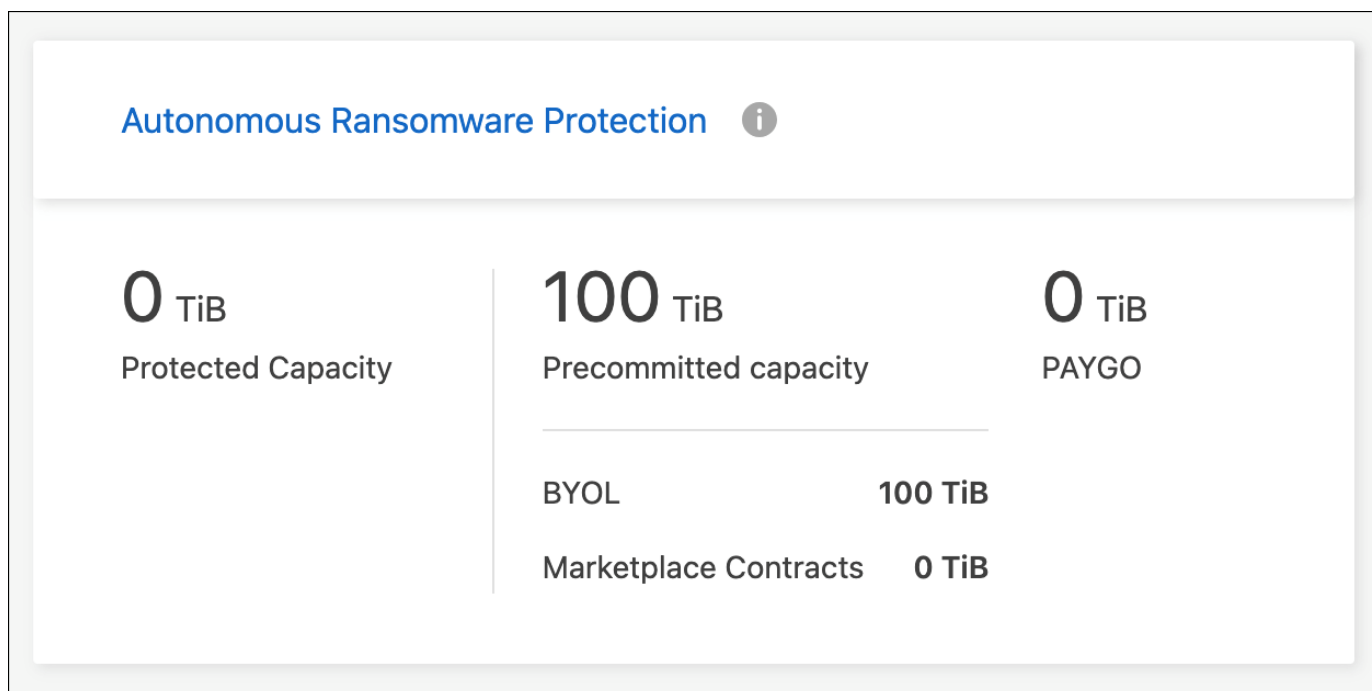
Separate from the file extension protections provided through the [ransomware protection setting](#), the ARP feature uses workload analysis to alert the user on potential attacks based on detected "abnormal activity". Both the ransomware protection setting and the ARP feature can be used in conjunction for comprehensive ransomware protection.

The ARP feature is available for use with bring your own license (BYOL) and marketplace subscriptions for your licenses at no additional cost.

ARP-enabled volumes have a designated state of "Learning mode" or "Active".

Configuration of ARP for volumes is performed through ONTAP System Manager and ONTAP CLI.

For more information on how to enable ARP with ONTAP System Manager and the ONTAP CLI, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Enable Autonomous Ransomware Protection](#).



Create tamperproof Snapshot copies of WORM files on Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You can create tamperproof Snapshot copies of write once, read many (WORM) files on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and retain the snapshots in unmodified form for a specific retention period. This functionality is powered by the SnapLock technology, and provides an additional layer of data protection and compliance.

Before you begin

Ensure that the volume that you use for creating Snapshot copies is a SnapLock volume. For information about enabling SnapLock protection on volumes, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Configure SnapLock](#).

Steps

1. Create Snapshot copies from the SnapLock volume. For information about creating Snapshot copies by using the CLI or System Manager, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Manage local Snapshot copies overview](#).

The Snapshot copies inherit the WORM properties of the volume, making them tamperproof. The underlying SnapLock technology ensures that a snapshot remains protected from edit and deletion until the specified retention period has elapsed.

2. You can modify the retention period if there's a need to edit these snapshots. For information, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Set the retention time](#).



Even though a Snapshot copy is protected for a specific retention period, the source volume can be deleted by a cluster administrator, as WORM storage in Cloud Volumes ONTAP operates under a "trusted storage administrator" model. Additionally, a trusted cloud administrator can delete the WORM data by operating on the cloud storage resources.

System administration

Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP software

Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP from BlueXP to gain access to the latest new features and enhancements. You should prepare Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems before you upgrade the software.

Upgrade overview

You should be aware of the following before you start the Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade process.

Upgrade from BlueXP only

Upgrades of Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be completed from BlueXP. You should not upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI. Doing so can impact system stability.

How to upgrade

BlueXP provides two ways to upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- By following upgrade notifications that appear in the working environment
- By placing the upgrade image at an HTTPS location and then providing BlueXP with the URL

Supported upgrade paths

The version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP that you can upgrade to depends on the version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP that you're currently running.

Current version	Versions that you can directly upgrade to
9.16.1 (for Azure and Google Cloud only)	9.17.1 (for Azure and Google Cloud only)
9.15.1	9.16.1 (for Azure and Google Cloud only)
9.15.0	9.15.1
9.14.1	9.15.1
	9.15.0
9.14.0	9.14.1
9.13.1	9.14.1
	9.14.0
9.13.0	9.13.1
9.12.1	9.13.1
	9.13.0
9.12.0	9.12.1

Current version	Versions that you can directly upgrade to
9.11.1	9.12.1
	9.12.0
9.11.0	9.11.1
9.10.1	9.11.1
	9.11.0
9.10.0	9.10.1
9.9.1	9.10.1
	9.10.0
9.9.0	9.9.1
9.8	9.9.1
9.7	9.8
9.6	9.7
9.5	9.6
9.4	9.5
9.3	9.4
9.2	9.3
9.1	9.2
9.0	9.1
8.3	9.0

Note the following:

- The supported upgrade paths for Cloud Volumes ONTAP are different than they are for an on-premises ONTAP cluster.
- If you upgrade by following the upgrade notifications that appear in a working environment, BlueXP will prompt you to upgrade to a release that follows these supported upgrade paths.
- If you upgrade by placing an upgrade image at an HTTPS location, be sure to follow these supported upgrade paths.
- In some cases, you might need to upgrade a few times to reach your target release.

For example, if you're running version 9.8 and you want to upgrade to 9.10.1, you first need to upgrade to version 9.9.1 and then to 9.10.1.

Patch releases

Starting in January 2024, patch upgrades are only available in BlueXP if there's a patch release for the three latest versions of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Patch versions are occasionally available for deployment, when the RC or GA version isn't available for deployment.

We use the latest GA release to determine the three latest versions to display in BlueXP. For example, if the current GA release is 9.13.1, patches for 9.11.1-9.13.1 appear in BlueXP. If you want to upgrade to a patch release for versions 9.11.1 or below, you will need to use the manual upgrade procedure by [downloading the ONTAP image](#).

As a general rule for patch (P) releases, you can upgrade from one version release to any P-release of the current version you're running or the next version.

Here are a couple of examples:

- 9.13.0 > 9.13.1P15
- 9.12.1 > 9.13.1P2

Reverting or downgrading

Reverting or downgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP to a previous release is not supported.

Support registration

Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be registered with NetApp Support in order to upgrade the software using any of the methods described on this page. This applies to both pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) and bring your own license (BYOL). You'll need to [manually register PAYGO systems](#), while BYOL systems are registered by default.



A system that isn't registered for support will still receive the software update notifications that appear in BlueXP when a new version is available. But you will need to register the system before you can upgrade the software.

Upgrades of the HA mediator

BlueXP also updates the mediator instance as needed during the Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade process.

Upgrades in AWS with c4, m4, and r4 EC2 instance types

Cloud Volumes ONTAP no longer supports the c4, m4, and r4 EC2 instance types. You can upgrade existing deployments to Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions 9.8-9.12.1 with these instance types. Before you upgrade we recommend that you [change the instance type](#). If you can't change the instance type, you need to [enable enhanced networking](#) before you upgrade. Read the following sections to learn more about changing the instance type and enabling enhanced networking.

In Cloud Volumes ONTAP running versions 9.13.0 and above, you cannot upgrade with c4, m4, and r4 EC2 instance types. In this case, you need to reduce the number of disks and then [change the instance type](#) or deploy a new HA-pair configuration with the c5, m5, and r5 EC2 instance types and migrate the data.

Change the instance type

c4, m4, and r4 EC2 instance types allow for more disks per node than the c5, m5, and r5 EC2 instance types. If the disk count per node for the c4, m4, or r4 EC2 instance you're running is below the max disk allowance per node for c5, m5, and r5 instances, you can change the EC2 instance type to c5, m5, or r5.

[Check disk and tiering limits by EC2 instance](#)
[Change the EC2 instance type for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

If you can't change the instance type, follow the steps in [Enable enhanced networking](#).

Enable enhanced networking

To upgrade to Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions 9.8 and later, you must enable *enhanced networking* on the cluster running the c4, m4, or r4 instance type. To enable ENA, refer to the Knowledge Base article ["How to enable Enhanced networking like SR-IOV or ENA on AWS Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances"](#).

Prepare to upgrade

Before performing an upgrade, you must verify that your systems are ready and make any required configuration changes.

- [Plan for downtime](#)
- [Verify that automatic giveback is still enabled](#)
- [Suspend SnapMirror transfers](#)
- [Verify that aggregates are online](#)
- [Verify that all LIFs are on home ports](#)

Plan for downtime

When you upgrade a single-node system, the upgrade process takes the system offline for up to 25 minutes, during which I/O is interrupted.

In many cases, upgrading an HA pair is nondisruptive and I/O is uninterrupted. During this nondisruptive upgrade process, each node is upgraded in tandem to continue serving I/O to clients.

Session-oriented protocols might cause adverse effects on clients and applications in certain areas during upgrades. For details, refer to the [ONTAP documentation](#)

Verify that automatic giveback is still enabled

Automatic giveback must be enabled on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair (this is the default setting). If it isn't, then the operation will fail.

[ONTAP documentation: Commands for configuring automatic giveback](#)

Suspend SnapMirror transfers

If a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system has active SnapMirror relationships, it is best to suspend transfers before you update the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software. Suspending the transfers prevents SnapMirror failures. You must suspend the transfers from the destination system.



Even though BlueXP backup and recovery uses an implementation of SnapMirror to create backup files (called SnapMirror Cloud), backups do not need to be suspended when a system is upgraded.

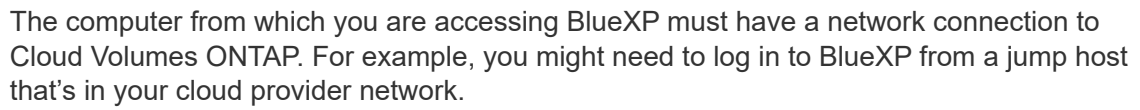
About this task

These steps describe how to use ONTAP System Manager for version 9.3 and later.

Steps

1. Log in to System Manager from the destination system.


You can log in to System Manager by pointing your web browser to the IP address of the cluster management LIF. You can find the IP address in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.



- ## Verify that aggregates are online

About this task

Steps

- | Aggregate Details | | |
|-------------------|---|---------------------|
| aggr1 | | |
| Overview | Capacity Allocation | Provider Properties |
| State | online | |
| Home Node | http://10.10.10.10 | |
| Encryption Type | cloudEncrypted | |
| Volumes | 2  | |

- ### Verify that all LIFs are on home ports

If an upgrade failure error occurs, consult the Knowledge Base (KB) article [Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade fails](#).

Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP

BlueXP notifies you when a new version is available for upgrade. You can start the upgrade process from this notification. For more information, see [Upgrade from BlueXP notifications](#).

Another way to perform software upgrades by using an image on an external URL. This option is helpful if BlueXP can't access the S3 bucket to upgrade the software or if you were provided with a patch. For more information, see [Upgrade from an image available at a URL](#).

Upgrade from BlueXP notifications

BlueXP displays a notification in Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environments when a new version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available:



Before you can upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP through the BlueXP notification, you must have a NetApp Support Site account.

You can start the upgrade process from this notification, which automates the process by obtaining the software image from an S3 bucket, installing the image, and then restarting the system.

Before you begin

BlueXP operations such as volume or aggregate creation must not be in progress on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Steps


1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. Select a working environment.

A notification appears in the Overview tab if a new version is available:



3. If you want to upgrade the installed version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP, click **Upgrade Now!** By default, you see the latest, compatible version for upgrade.

Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP Version



You are about to upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP ⓘ

9.12.1 → 9.13.1P10 (Jul 7, 2024)

[Select other versions](#)

End User License Agreement (EULA)

1. DEFINITIONS

1.1. "Documentation" means technical documentation describing the features and functions of the Software.

1.2. "NetApp Cloud Provider" means a third party authorized by NetApp to offer or enable the use of the Software as part of such provider's cloud-based service.

1.3. "NetApp Partner" means an authorized NetApp distributor, reseller or other channel partner. 1.4. "Open Source Software" means third party software that is openly and freely licensed under the terms of a public

☐ I read and approve the End User License Agreement (EULA)

Upgrade

Cancel

If you want to upgrade to another version, click **Select other versions**. You see the latest Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions listed that are also compatible with the installed version on your system. For example, the installed version on your system is 9.12.1P3, and the following compatible versions are available:

- 9.12.1P4 to 9.12.1P14
- 9.13.1 and 9.13.1P1

You see 9.13.1P1 as the default version for upgrade, and 9.12.1P13, 9.13.1P14, 9.13.1, and 9.13.1P1 as the other available versions.

4. Optionally, you can click **All versions** to enter another version that you want to upgrade to (say, the next patch of the installed version). For a compatible upgrade path of your current Cloud Volumes ONTAP version, refer to [Supported upgrade paths](#).
5. Click **Save**, and then **Apply**.

Select the ONTAP version you want to upgrade to:

Version	Date
<input type="radio"/> 9.12.1P14	Aug 22, 2024
<input type="radio"/> 9.12.1P13	Jul 7, 2024
<input type="radio"/> 9.13.1P10	Jul 7, 2024
<input type="radio"/> 9.13.1P9	May 9, 2024

☒ All versions

Write the version you want to upgrade to:

Write the version here

Save Cancel

Apply Cancel

6. In the Upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP page, read the EULA, and then select **I read and approve the EULA**.
7. Click **Upgrade**.
8. To check the status of the upgrade, click the Settings icon and select **Timeline**.

Result

BlueXP starts the software upgrade. You can perform actions on the working environment when the software update is complete.

After you finish

If you suspended SnapMirror transfers, use System Manager to resume the transfers.

Upgrade from an image available at a URL

You can place the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image on the Connector or on an HTTP server and then initiate the software upgrade from BlueXP. You might use this option if BlueXP can't access the S3 bucket to upgrade the software.

Before you begin

- BlueXP operations such as volume or aggregate creation must not be in progress on the Cloud Volumes

ONTAP system.

- If you use HTTPS to host ONTAP images, the upgrade can fail due to SSL authentication issues, which are caused by missing certificates. The workaround is to generate and install a CA-signed certificate to be used for authentication between ONTAP and BlueXP.

Go to the NetApp Knowledge Base to view step-by-step instructions:

[NetApp KB: How to configure BlueXP as an HTTPS server to host upgrade images](#)

Steps

1. Optional: Set up an HTTP server that can host the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image.

If you have a VPN connection to the virtual network, you can place the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image on an HTTP server in your own network. Otherwise, you must place the file on an HTTP server in the cloud.

2. If you use your own security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, ensure that the outbound rules allow HTTP connections so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can access the software image.



The predefined Cloud Volumes ONTAP security group allows outbound HTTP connections by default.

3. Obtain the software image from [the NetApp Support Site](#).
4. Copy the software image to a directory on the Connector or on an HTTP server from which the file will be served.

Two paths are available. The correct path depends on your Connector version.

- `/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/docker_occm/data/ontap/images/`
- `/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/ontap/images/`

5. From the working environment in BlueXP, click the ... (**ellipses icon**), and then click **Update Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
6. On the Update Cloud Volumes ONTAP version page, enter the URL, and then click **Change Image**.

If you copied the software image to the Connector in the path shown above, you would enter the following URL:

`http://<Connector-private-IP-address>/ontap/images/<image-file-name>`



In the URL, **image-file-name** must follow the format "cot.image.9.13.1P2.tgz".

7. Click **Proceed** to confirm.

Result

BlueXP starts the software update. You can perform actions on the working environment once the software update is complete.

After you finish

If you suspended SnapMirror transfers, use System Manager to resume the transfers.

Register Cloud Volumes ONTAP pay-as-you-go systems

Support from NetApp is included with Cloud Volumes ONTAP pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) systems, but you must first activate support by registering the systems with NetApp.

Registering a PAYGO system with NetApp is required to upgrade ONTAP software using any of the methods [described on this page](#).



A system that isn't registered for support will still receive the software update notifications that appear in BlueXP when a new version is available. But you will need to register the system before you can upgrade the software.

Steps

1. If you have not yet added your NetApp Support Site account to BlueXP, go to **Account Settings** and add it now.

[Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts.](#)

2. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the system you want to register..
3. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Support Registration**.

Information		Features
Working Environment Tags	Tags	
Scheduled Downtime	Off	
S3 Storage Classes	Standard-Infrequent Access	
Instance Type	m5.xlarge	
Write Speed	Normal	
Ransomware Protection	Off	
Support Registration	Not Registered	
CIFs Setup		

4. Select a NetApp Support Site account and click **Register**.

Result

BlueXP registers the system with NetApp.

Convert a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node-based license to a capacity-based license

After the end of availability (EOA) of your node-based licenses, you should transition to

capacity-based licensing by using the BlueXP license conversion tool.

For annual or longer-term commitments, NetApp recommends that you contact your NetApp representative prior to the EOA date (11 November, 2024) or license expiration date to ensure that the prerequisites for the transition are in place. If you don't have a long-term contract for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node and run your system against an on-demand pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription, it is important to plan your conversion before the end of support (EOS) on 31 December, 2024. In both the cases, you should ensure that your system fulfills the requirements before you use the BlueXP license conversion tool for a seamless transition.

For information about the EOA and EOS, refer to [End of availability of node-based licenses](#).

About this task

- When you use the license conversion tool, the transition from node-based to capacity-based licensing model is carried out in place and online that eliminates the need for any data migration or provisioning of additional cloud resources.
- It is a non-disruptive operation, and no service disruption or application downtime occurs.
- The account and application data in your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system remains intact.
- The underlying cloud resources remain unaffected post conversion.
- The license conversion tool supports all deployment types, such as single node, high availability (HA) in single availability zone (AZ), HA in multiple AZ, bring your own license (BYOL), and PAYGO.
- The tool supports all node-based licenses as the source and all capacity-based licenses as the destination. For example, if you have a PAYGO Standard node-based license, you can convert it to any capacity-based license purchased through the marketplace. NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).
- The conversion is supported for all cloud providers, AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.
- Post conversion, the serial number of the node-based license will be replaced by a capacity-based format. This is done as a part of the conversion, and is reflected on your NetApp Support Site (NSS) account.
- When you transition to the capacity-based model, your data continues to be retained in the same location as the node-based licensing. This approach guarantees no disruption in data placement, and upholds data sovereignty principles throughout the transition.

Before your begin

- You should have an NSS account with customer access or administrator access.
- Your NSS account should be registered with the BlueXP user credentials.
- The working environment should be linked to the NSS account with customer access or administrator access.
- You should have a valid capacity-based license in place, either a BYOL license or marketplace subscription.
- A capacity-based license should be available in the BlueXP account. This license can be a marketplace subscription or a BYOL/private offer package in BlueXP digital wallet.
- Understand the following criteria before selecting a destination package:
 - If the account has a capacity-based BYOL license, the destination package selected should align with the account's BYOL capacity-based licenses:
 - When `Professional` is selected as the destination package, the account should have a BYOL license with a Professional package:

- When `Essentials` is selected as the destination package, the account should have a BYOL license with the Essentials package.
- If the destination package does not align with the account's BYOL license availability, it implies that the capacity-based license might not include the selected package. In this case, you will be charged through your marketplace subscription.
- If there is no capacity-based BYOL license but only a marketplace subscription, you should ensure that the selected package is included in your capacity-based marketplace subscription.
- If there is not enough capacity in your existing capacity-based license, and if you have a marketplace subscription to charge for the additional capacity usage, you will be charged for the additional capacity through your marketplace subscription.
- If there is not enough capacity in your existing capacity-based license, and you don't have a marketplace subscription to charge for the additional capacity usage, the conversion cannot occur. You should add a marketplace subscription to charge the additional capacity or extend the available capacity to your current license.
- If the destination package does not align with the account's BYOL license availability and also if there is not enough capacity in your existing capacity-based license, then you will be charged through your marketplace subscription.



If any of these requirements is not fulfilled, the license conversion does not happen. In specific cases, the license might be converted, but cannot be used. Click the information icon to identify the issues and take corrective actions.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the working environment for which you want to modify the license type.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel.
3. Check the pencil icon next to **Charging method**. If the charging method for your system is `Node Based`, you can convert it to by-capacity charging.



The icon is disabled if your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is already charged by capacity, or if any of the requirements is not fulfilled.

4. On the **Convert Node-based licenses to Capacity-based** screen, verify the working environment name and source license details.
5. Select the destination package for converting the existing license:
 - `Essentials`. The default value is `Essentials`.
 - `Professional`
6. If you have a BYOL license, you can select the checkbox to delete the node-based license from BlueXP digital wallet post conversion. If the conversion is not complete, then even on selecting this checkbox, the license will not be deleted from the digital wallet. If you have a marketplace subscription, this option is unavailable.
7. Select the check box to confirm that you understand the implications of the change, and then click **Proceed**.

After you finish

View the new license serial number and verify the changes in BlueXP digital wallet.

Pricing in different hyperscalars

For details on pricing, go to the [NetApp BlueXP website](#).

For information about private offers in specific hyperscalars, write to:

- AWS - aws@netapp.com
- Azure - azure@netapp.com
- Google Cloud - gcp@netapp.com

Start and stop a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system

You can stop and start Cloud Volumes ONTAP from BlueXP to manage your cloud compute costs.

Scheduling automatic shutdowns of Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You might want to shut down Cloud Volumes ONTAP during specific time intervals to lower your compute costs. Rather than do this manually, you can configure BlueXP to automatically shut down and then restart systems at specific times.

About this task

- When you schedule an automatic shutdown of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, BlueXP postpones the shutdown if an active data transfer is in progress.









BlueXP shuts down the system after the transfer is complete.

- This task schedules automatic shutdowns of both nodes in an HA pair.
- Snapshots of boot and root disks are not created when turning off Cloud Volumes ONTAP through scheduled shutdowns.

Snapshots are automatically created only when performing a manual shutdown, as described in the next section.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the desired working environment.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Scheduled Downtime**.

Information		Features
Working Environment Tags	Tags	
Scheduled Downtime	Off	
S3 Storage Classes	Standard-Infrequent Access	
Instance Type	m5.xlarge	
Write Speed	Normal	
Ransomware Protection	Off	
Support Registration	Not Registered	
CI/CD Setup		

3. Specify the shutdown schedule:

- Choose whether you want to shut down the system every day, every weekday, every weekend, or any combination of the three options.
- Specify when you want to turn off the system and for how long you want it turned off.

Example

The following image shows a schedule that instructs BlueXP to shut down the system every Saturday at 20:00 P.M. (8:00 PM) for 12 hours. BlueXP restarts the system every Monday at 12:00 a.m.

Schedule Downtime

Cloud Manager Time Zone: 17:58 UTC

Select when to turn off your Working Environment:

Turn off every day

Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat

at

20

 :

00

for

12

hours (1-24)

Turn off every weekdays

Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri

at

20

 :

00

for

12

hours (1-24)

Turn off every weekend

Sat

at

20

 :

00

for

12

hours (1-48)

4. Click **Save**.

Result

BlueXP saves the schedule. The corresponding Scheduled Downtime line item under the Features panel displays 'On'.

Stopping Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Stopping Cloud Volumes ONTAP saves you from accruing compute costs and creates snapshots of the root and boot disks, which can be helpful for troubleshooting.



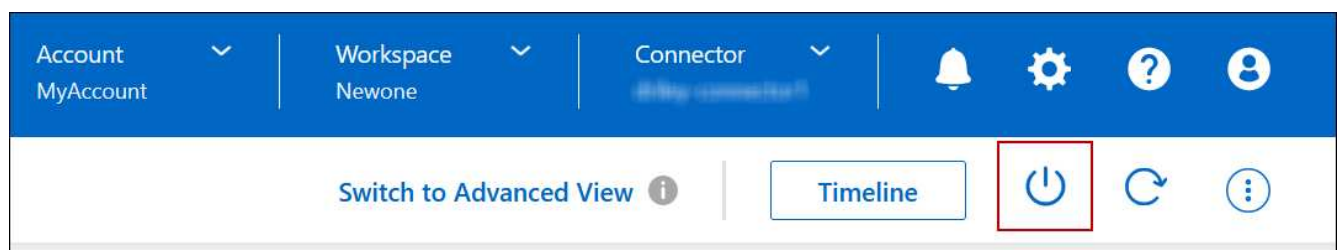
To reduce costs, BlueXP periodically deletes older snapshots of root and boot disks. Only the two most recent snapshots are retained for both the root and boot disks.

About this task

When you stop an HA pair, BlueXP shuts down both nodes.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the **Turn off** icon.



2. Keep the option to create snapshots enabled because the snapshots can enable system recovery.
3. Click **Turn Off**.

It can take up to a few minutes to stop the system. You can restart systems at a later time from the working environment page.



Snapshots are created automatically upon reboot.

Synchronize Cloud Volumes ONTAP system time using the NTP server

Specifying an NTP server synchronizes the time between the systems in your network, which can help prevent issues due to time differences.

Specify an NTP server using the [BlueXP API](#) or from the user interface when you [create a CIFS server](#).

Modify system write speed

BlueXP enables you to choose a normal or high write speed for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. The default write speed is normal. You can change to high write speed if fast write performance is required for your workload.

High write speed is supported with all types of single node systems and some HA pair configurations. View supported configurations in the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#)

Before you change the write speed, you should [understand the differences between the normal and high settings](#).

About this task

- Ensure that operations such as volume or aggregate creation are not in progress.
- Be aware that this change restarts the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. This is disruptive process that requires downtime for the entire system.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the system you configure to the write speed.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Write Speed**.

Information		Features
Working Environment Tags	Tags	
Scheduled Downtime	Off	
S3 Storage Classes	Standard-Infrequent Access	
Instance Type	m5.xlarge	
Write Speed	Normal	
Ransomware Protection	Off	
Support Registration	Not Registered	
CIFs Setup		

3. Select **Normal** or **High**.

If you choose High, then you'll need to read the "I understand..." statement and confirm by checking the box.



The **High** write speed option is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in Google Cloud starting with version 9.13.0.

4. Click **Save**, review the confirmation message, and then click **Approve**.

Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin password

Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes a cluster admin account. You can change the password for this account from BlueXP, if needed.



You should not change the password for the admin account through ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI. The password will not be reflected in BlueXP. As a result, BlueXP cannot monitor the instance properly.

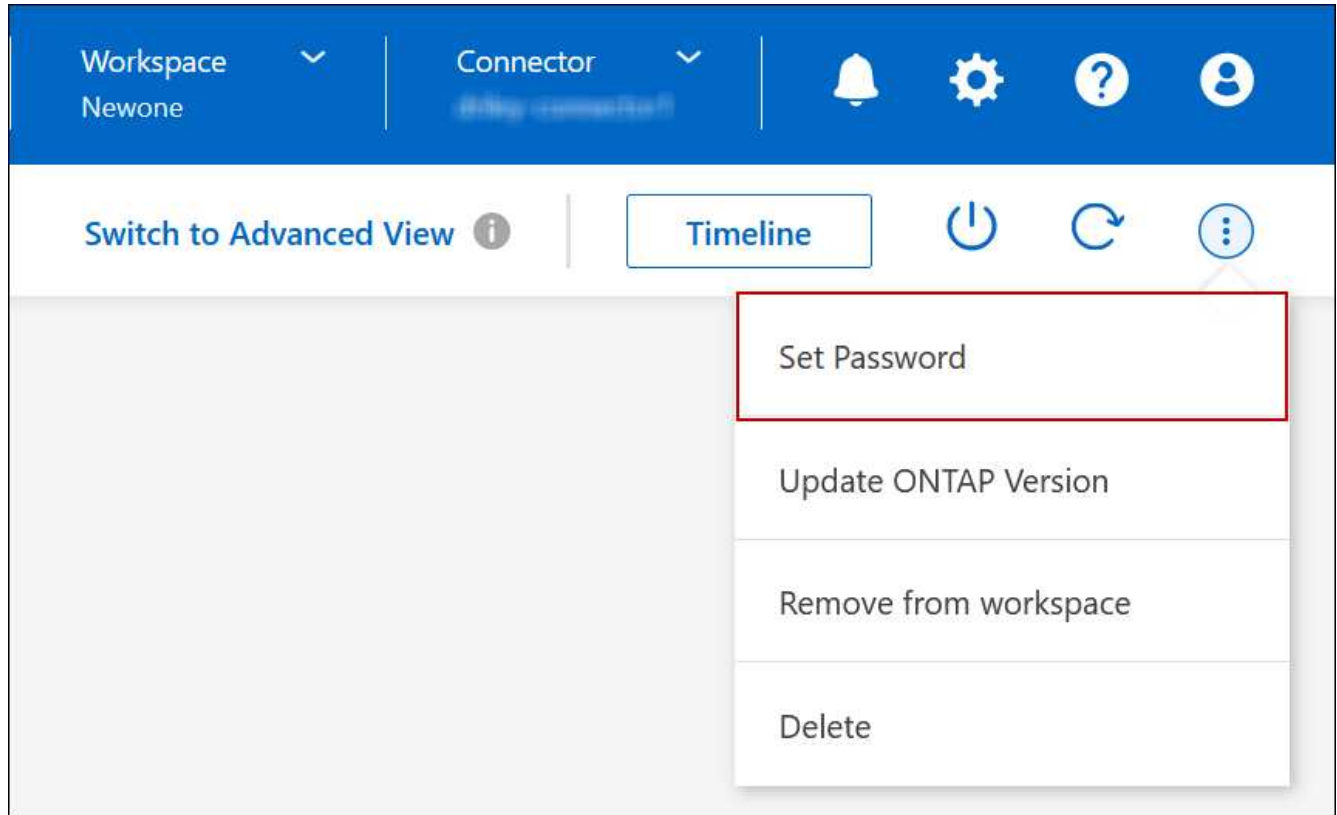
About this task

The password must observe a few rules. The new password:

- Shouldn't contain the word `admin`
- Must be between eight and 50 characters in length
- Must contain at least one English letter and one digit
- Shouldn't contain these special characters: / () { } [] # : % " ? \

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.
2. On the upper right of the BlueXP console, click the ellipses icon, and select **Set password**.



Add, remove, or delete systems

Add an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to BlueXP

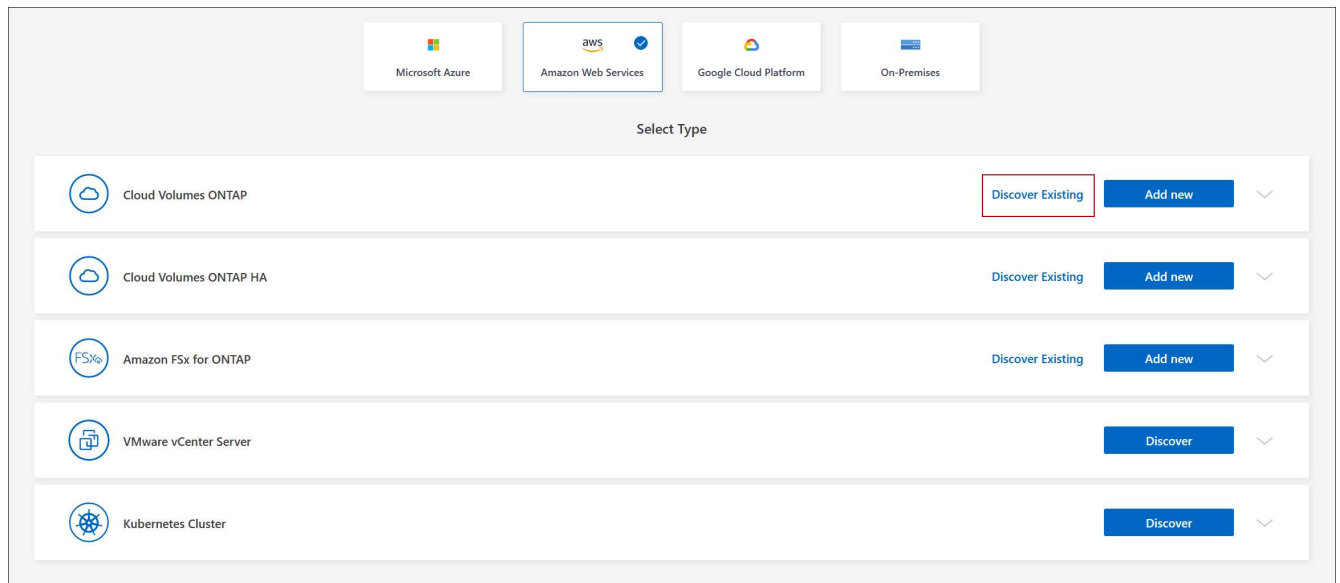
You can discover and add existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to BlueXP. You might do this if you deployed a new BlueXP system.

Before you begin

You must know the password for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP admin user account.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, click **Add Working Environment**.
3. Select the cloud provider in which the system resides.
4. Choose the type of Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to add.
5. Click the link to discover an existing system.



6. On the Region page, select a region. You can see the systems that are running in the selected region.



Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems are represented as instances on this page. From the list, you can select only those instances that are registered with the current account.

7. On the Credentials page, enter the password for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP admin user, and then select **Go**.

Result

BlueXP adds the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances to the project or workspace.

Remove a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment from BlueXP

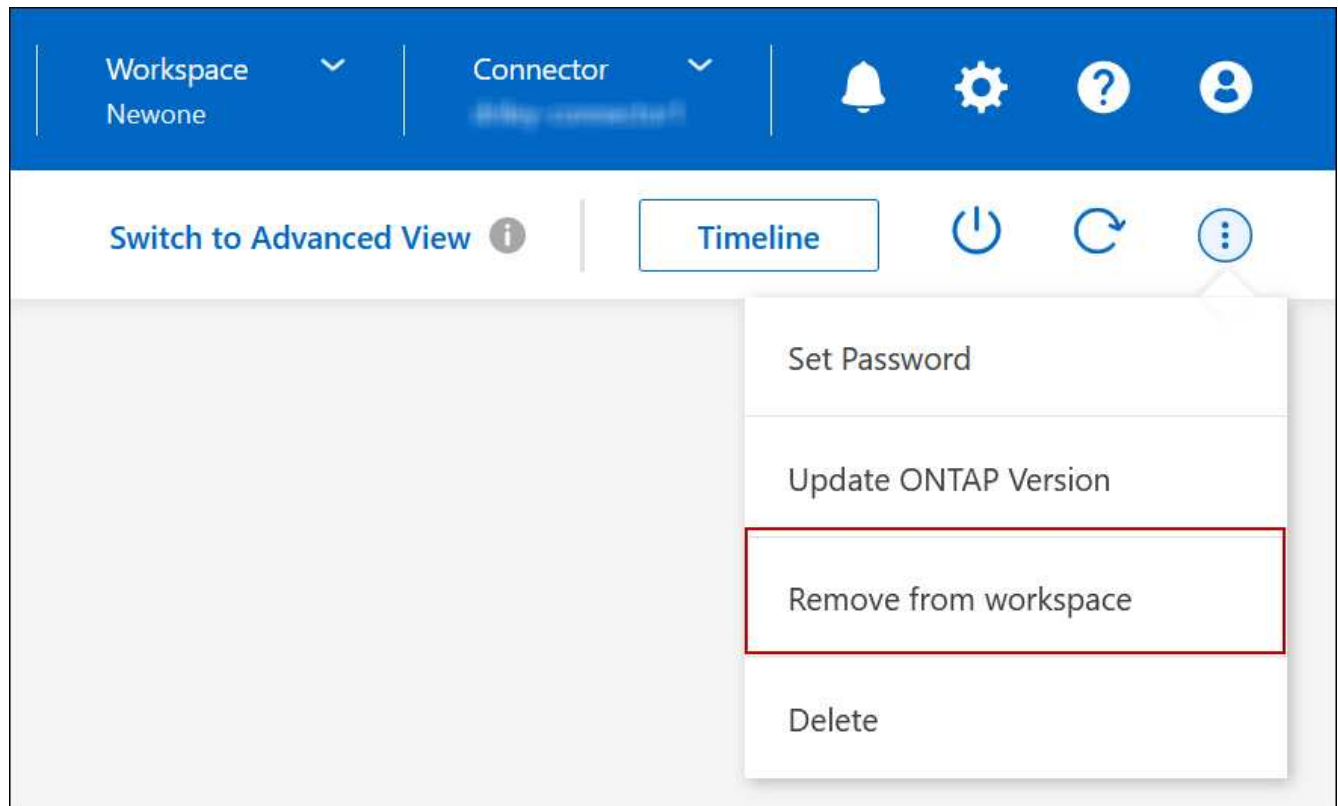
You can remove a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment to move it to another system or to troubleshoot discovery issues.

About this task

Removing a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment removes it from BlueXP. It does not delete the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. You can later rediscover the working environment—for example, if you had problems during the initial discovery.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click on the working environment you want to remove.
2. On the upper right of the BlueXP console, click the ellipses icon, and select **Remove from workspace**.



3. In the Review from Workspace window, click **Remove**.

Result

BlueXP removes the working environment. Users can rediscover this working environment from the Canvas page at any time.

Delete a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system from BlueXP

You should always delete Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems from BlueXP, rather than from your cloud provider's console. For example, if you terminate a licensed Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance from your cloud provider, then you can't use the license key for another instance. You must delete the working environment from BlueXP to release the license.

When you delete a working environment, BlueXP terminates Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances and deletes disks and snapshots.



Other resources, such as backups managed by BlueXP backup and recovery, and instances for BlueXP classification, are not deleted when you delete a working environment. You'll need to manually delete them. If you don't, then you'll continue to incur charges for these resources.

When BlueXP deploys Cloud Volumes ONTAP in your cloud provider, it enables termination protection on the instances. This option helps prevent accidental termination.

Steps

1. If you enabled BlueXP backup and recovery on the working environment, determine whether the backed up data is still required and then [delete the backups, if necessary](#).

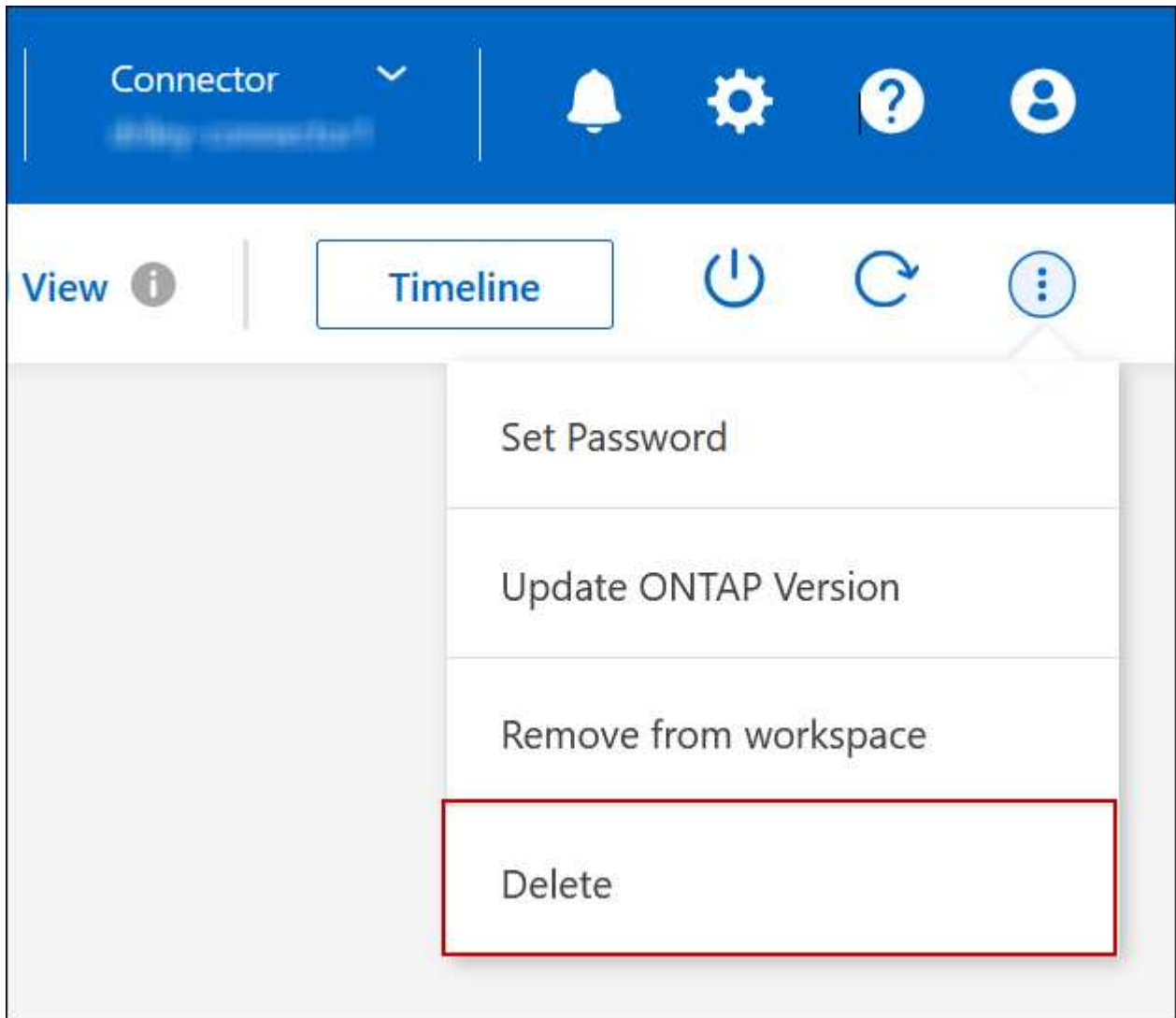
BlueXP backup and recovery is independent from Cloud Volumes ONTAP by design. BlueXP backup and

recovery doesn't automatically delete backups when you delete a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, and there is no current support in the UI to delete the backups after the system has been deleted.

2. If you enabled BlueXP classification on this working environment and no other working environments use this service, then you'll need to delete the instance for the service.

[Learn more about the BlueXP classification instance.](#)

3. Delete the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.
 - a. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment that you want to delete.
 - b. On the upper right of the BlueXP console, click the ellipses icon, and select **Delete**.



- c. Under the Delete Working Environment window, type the name of the working environment and then click **Delete**. It can take up to five minutes to delete the working environment.



BlueXP backup and recovery is free only for Cloud Volumes ONTAP Professional licenses. This free benefit does not apply to deleted environments. If backed up copies of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP environment are retained in a BlueXP backup and recovery instance, you will be charged for the backed up copies until they are deleted.

AWS administration

Modify the EC2 instance type for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS

You can choose from several instance or types when you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS. You can change the instance type at any time if you determine that it is undersized or oversized for your needs.

About this task

- Automatic giveback must be enabled on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair (this is the default setting). If it isn't, then the operation will fail.

[ONTAP 9 Documentation: Commands for configuring automatic giveback](#)

- Changing the instance type can affect AWS service charges.
- The operation restarts Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For single node systems, I/O is interrupted.

For HA pairs, the change is nondisruptive. HA pairs continue to serve data.



BlueXP changes one node at a time by initiating takeover and waiting for give back. NetApp's Quality Assurance team tested both writing and reading files during this process and didn't see any issues on the client side. As connections changed, some retries were observed on the I/O level, but the application layer overcame the rewiring of NFS/CIFS connections.

Reference

For a list of supported instance types in AWS, refer to [Supported EC2 instances](#).

If you can't change the instance type from c4, m4, or r4 instances, refer to KB article "[Converting an AWS Xen CVO instance to Nitro \(KVM\)](#)".

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, select the working environment.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Instance type**.

Information		Features
Working Environment Tags	Tags	
Scheduled Downtime	Off	
S3 Storage Classes	Standard-Infrequent Access	
Instance Type	m5.xlarge	
Write Speed	Normal	
Ransomware Protection	Off	
Support Registration	Not Registered	
CIFs Setup		

If you are using a node-based pay as you go (PAYGO) license, you can optionally choose a different license and instance type by clicking the pencil icon next to **License type**.

1. Choose an instance type, select the check box to confirm that you understand the implications of the change, and then click **Change**.

Result

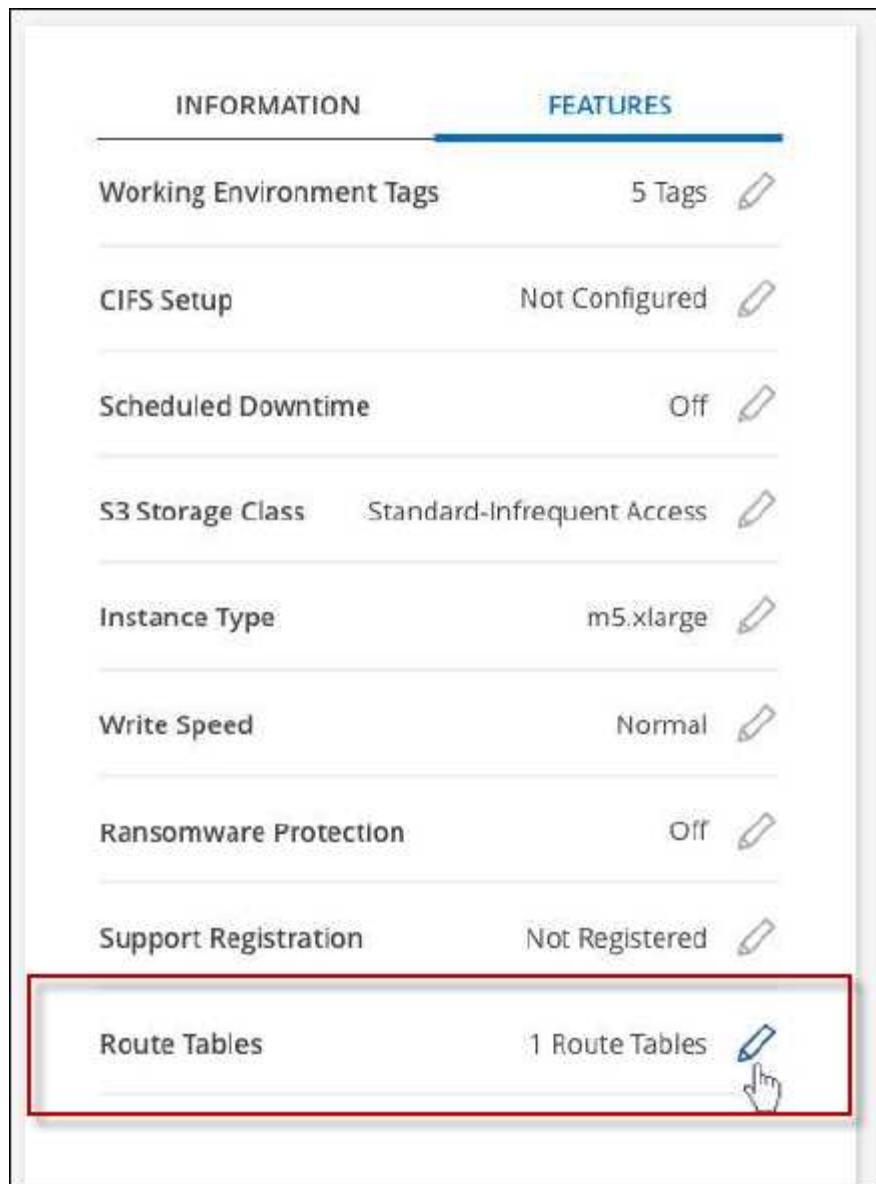
Cloud Volumes ONTAP reboots with the new configuration.

Modify route tables for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in multiple AWS AZs

You can modify the AWS route tables that include routes to the floating IP addresses for an HA pair that's deployed in multiple AWS Availability Zones (AZs). You might do this if new NFS or CIFS clients need to access an HA pair in AWS.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, select the working environment.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **Route tables**.



3. Modify the list of selected route tables and then click **Save**.

Result

BlueXP sends an AWS request to modify the route tables.

Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP using System Manager

Advanced storage management capabilities in Cloud Volumes ONTAP are available through ONTAP System Manager, a management interface provided with ONTAP systems. You can access System Manager directly from BlueXP.

Features

You can perform various storage management functions using ONTAP System Manager in BlueXP. The following list includes some of those functionalities, though this list is not exhaustive:

- Advanced storage management: Manage consistency groups, shares, qtrees, quotas, and Storage VMs.

- Volume move: [Move a volume to a different aggregate](#).
- Networking management: Manage IPspaces, network interfaces, portsets, and ethernet ports.
- Manage FlexGroup volumes: You can create and manage FlexGroup volumes only through System Manager. BlueXP does not support FlexGroup volume creation.
- Events and jobs: View event logs, system alerts, jobs, and audit logs.
- Advanced data protection: Protect storage VMs, LUNs, and consistency groups.
- Host management: Set up SAN initiator groups and NFS clients.
- S3 object storage management: S3 storage management capabilities in Cloud Volumes ONTAP are available only in System Manager, and not in BlueXP.

Supported configurations

- Advanced storage management through ONTAP System Manager is available in Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.0 and later in standard cloud regions.
- System Manager integration is not supported in GovCloud regions or in regions that have no outbound internet access.

Limitations

A few features that appear in the System Manager interface are not supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- BlueXP tiering: Cloud Volumes ONTAP does not support the BlueXP tiering service. You should set up tiering of data to object storage directly from BlueXP's Standard View when creating volumes.
- Tiers: Aggregate management (including local tiers and cloud tiers) is not supported from System Manager. You must manage aggregates directly from BlueXP's Standard View.
- Firmware upgrades: Cloud Volumes ONTAP does not support automatic firmware updates from the **Cluster > Settings** page.
- Role-based access control: Role-based access control from System Manager is not supported.
- SMB Continuous Availability (CA): Cloud Volumes ONTAP does not support [continuously available SMB shares](#) for nondisruptive operations.

Configure authentication for accessing System Manager

As an administrator, you can activate authentication for users accessing ONTAP System Manager from BlueXP. You can determine the right level of access permissions based on the ONTAP user roles, and enable or disable authentication as needed. If you enable authentication, then users need to enter their ONTAP user credentials every time they access System Manager from BlueXP or when the page is reloaded, because BlueXP doesn't store the credentials internally. If you disable authentication, users can access System Manager using BlueXP admin credentials.



This setting is applicable per BlueXP Connector for the ONTAP users in your organization or account, irrespective of Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environments or BlueXP projects.

Required permissions

You need to be assigned BlueXP Organization or Account admin privileges to modify the BlueXP Connector settings for Cloud Volumes ONTAP user authentication.

Steps

1. Select the **Connector** drop-down from the BlueXP header.
2. Select **Manage Connectors**.
3. Click the action menu **...** for the required Connector and select **Edit Connector**.
4. Under **Force user credentials**, select the **Enable/Disable** check box. By default, authentication is disabled.



If you set this value to **Enable**, authentication is reset, and you have to modify any existing workflows to accommodate this change.

5. Click **Save**.

Get started with System Manager

You can access ONTAP System Manager from a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

Steps

1. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
2. On the Canvas page, select a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
3. From the right panel, select **Services > System Manager > Open**.
4. If prompted, enter your ONTAP user credentials and click **Login**.
5. If the confirmation message appears, read through it and click **Close**.
6. Use System Manager to manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
7. If needed, click **Switch to Standard View** to return to standard management through BlueXP.

Help with using System Manager

If you need help using System Manager with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can refer to the [ONTAP documentation](#) for step-by-step instructions. Here are a few ONTAP documentation links that might help:

- [ONTAP roles, applications, and authentication](#)
- [Use System Manager to access a cluster](#).
- [Volume and LUN management](#)
- [Network management](#)
- [Data protection](#)
- [Create continuously available SMB shares](#)

Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the CLI

The Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI enables you to run all administrative commands and is a good choice for advanced tasks or if you are more comfortable using the CLI. You can connect to the CLI using Secure Shell (SSH).

Before you begin

The host from which you use SSH to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP must have a network connection to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For example, you might need to SSH from a jump host that's in your cloud provider network.



When deployed in multiple AZs, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations use a floating IP address for the cluster management interface, which means external routing is not available. You must connect from a host that is part of the same routing domain.

Steps

1. In BlueXP, identify the IP address of the cluster management interface:
 - a. From the left navigation menu, select **Storage > Canvas**.
 - b. On the Canvas page, select the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
 - c. Copy the cluster management IP address that appears in the right pane.
2. Use SSH to connect to the cluster management interface IP address using the admin account.

Example

The following image shows an example using PuTTY:

Specify the destination you want to connect to

Host Name (or IP address)	Port
admin@192.168.111.5	22

Connection type:

☐ Raw ☐ Telnet ☐ Rlogin ☒ SSH ☐ Serial

3. At the login prompt, enter the password for the admin account.

Example

```
Password: *****  
COT2: :>
```

System health and events

Verify AutoSupport setup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

AutoSupport proactively monitors the health of your system and sends messages to NetApp technical support. By default, AutoSupport is enabled on each node to send messages to technical support using the HTTPS transport protocol. It's best to verify that AutoSupport can send these messages.

The only required configuration step is to ensure that Cloud Volumes ONTAP has outbound internet connectivity. For details, refer to the networking requirements for your cloud provider.

AutoSupport requirements

Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes require outbound internet access for NetApp AutoSupport, which proactively monitors the health of your system and sends messages to NetApp technical support.

Routing and firewall policies must allow HTTPS traffic to the following endpoints so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can send AutoSupport messages:

- <https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage>
- <https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup>

If an outbound internet connection isn't available to send AutoSupport messages, BlueXP automatically configures your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to use the Connector as a proxy server. The only requirement is to ensure that the Connector's security group allows *inbound* connections over port 3128. You'll need to open this port after you deploy the Connector.

If you defined strict outbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, then you'll also need to ensure that the Cloud Volumes ONTAP security group allows *outbound* connections over port 3128.



If you're using an HA pair, the HA mediator doesn't require outbound internet access.

After you've verified that outbound internet access is available, you can test AutoSupport to ensure that it can send messages. For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Set up AutoSupport](#).

Troubleshoot your AutoSupport configuration

If an outbound connection isn't available and BlueXP can't configure your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to use the Connector as a proxy server, you'll receive a notification from BlueXP titled "<working environment name> is unable to send AutoSupport messages."

You're most likely receiving this message because of networking issues.

Follow these steps to address this problem.

Steps

1. SSH to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system so that you can administer the system from the ONTAP CLI.

[Learn how to SSH to Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

2. Display the detailed status of the AutoSupport subsystem:

```
autosupport check show-details
```

The response should be similar to the following:

```

Category: smtp
  Component: mail-server
    Status: failed
    Detail: SMTP connectivity check failed for destination:
            mailhost. Error: Could not resolve host -
'mailhost'
    Corrective Action: Check the hostname of the SMTP server

Category: http-https
  Component: http-put-destination
    Status: ok
    Detail: Successfully connected to:
            <https://support.netapp.com/put/AsupPut/>.

  Component: http-post-destination
    Status: ok
    Detail: Successfully connected to:

https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup.

Category: on-demand
  Component: ondemand-server
    Status: ok
    Detail: Successfully connected to:
            https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage.

Category: configuration
  Component: configuration
    Status: ok
    Detail: No configuration issues found.
5 entries were displayed.

```

If the status of the http-https category is "ok" then it means AutoSupport is configured properly and messages can be sent.

3. If the status is not ok, verify the proxy URL for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP node:

```
autosupport show -fields proxy-url
```

4. If the proxy URL parameter is empty, configure Cloud Volumes ONTAP to use the Connector as a proxy:

```
autosupport modify -proxy-url http://<connector private ip>:3128
```

5. Verify AutoSupport status again:

```
autosupport check show-details
```

6. If the status is still failed, validate that there is connectivity between Cloud Volumes ONTAP and the Connector over port 3128.
7. If the status ID is still failed after verifying that there is connectivity, SSH to the Connector.

[Learn more about Connecting to the Linux VM for the Connector](#)

8. Go to `/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/docker_occm/data/`
9. Open the proxy configuration file `squid.conf`

The basic structure of the file is as follows:

```
http_port 3128
acl localnet src 172.31.0.0/16
acl azure_aws_metadata dst 169.254.169.254

http_access allow localnet
http_access deny azure_aws_metadata
http_access allow localhost
http_access deny all
```

The `localnet` `src` value is the CIDR of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

10. If the CIDR block of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system isn't in the range that's specified in the file, either update the value or add a new entry as follows:

```
acl cvonet src <cidr>
```

If you add this new entry, don't forget to also add an allow entry:

```
http_access allow cvonet
```

Here's an example:

```
http_port 3128
acl localnet src 172.31.0.0/16
acl cvonet src 172.33.0.0/16
acl azure_aws_metadata dst 169.254.169.254

http_access allow localnet
http_access allow cvonet
http_access deny azure_aws_metadata
http_access allow localhost
http_access deny all
```

11. After editing the config file, restart the proxy container as `sudo`:

```
docker restart squid
```

12. Go back to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI and verify that Cloud Volumes ONTAP can send AutoSupport messages:

```
autosupport check show-details
```

Configure EMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems

Related links

The Event Management System (EMS) collects and displays information about events that occur on ONTAP systems. To receive event notifications, you can set event destinations (email addresses, SNMP trap hosts, or syslog servers) and event routes for a particular event severity.

You can configure EMS using the CLI. For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: EMS configuration overview](#).

Concepts

Licensing

Licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Several licensing options are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Each option enables you to choose a consumption model that meets your needs.

Licensing overview

The following licensing options are available for new customers.

Capacity-based licensing

Pay for multiple Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in your NetApp account by provisioned capacity. Includes the ability to purchase add-on cloud data services. For more information about consumption models in capacity-based licenses, refer to [Learn more about capacity-based licenses](#).

Keystone Subscription

A pay-as-you-grow subscription-based service that delivers a seamless hybrid cloud experience for High Availability (HA) pairs.

The following sections provide more details about each of these options.



Support is not available for the use of licensed features without a license.

Capacity-based licensing

Capacity-based licensing packages enable you to pay for Cloud Volumes ONTAP per TiB of capacity. The license is associated with your NetApp account and enables you to charge multiple systems against the license, as long as enough capacity is available through the license.

For example, you could purchase a single 20 TiB license, deploy four Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, and then allocate a 5 TiB volume to each system, for a total of 20 TiB. The capacity is available to the volumes on each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system deployed in that account.

Capacity-based licensing is available in the form of a *package*. When you deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you can choose from several licensing packages based on your business needs.



While the actual usage and metering for the products and services managed in BlueXP are always calculated in GiB and TiB, the terms GB/GiB and TB/TiB are used interchangeably. This is reflected in the Cloud marketplace listings, price quotes, listing descriptions, and in other supporting documentation.

Packages

The following capacity-based packages are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For more information about capacity-based license packages, refer to [Learn more about capacity-based licenses](#).

For a list of supported VM types with the following capacity-based packages, refer to:

Freemium

Provides all Cloud Volumes ONTAP features free of charge from NetApp (cloud provider charges still apply). A Freemium package has these characteristics:

- No license or contract is needed.
- Support from NetApp is not included.
- You're limited to 500 GiB of provisioned capacity per Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
- You can use up to 10 Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems with the Freemium offering per NetApp account, for any cloud provider.
- If the provisioned capacity for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system exceeds 500 GiB, BlueXP converts the system to an Essentials package.

As soon as a system is converted to the Essentials package, [minimum charging](#) applies to it.

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that has been converted into an Essentials package cannot be switched back to Freemium even if the provisioned capacity is reduced to less than 500 GiB. Other systems with less than 500 GiB of provisioned capacity stay on Freemium (as long as they were deployed using the Freemium offering).

Essentials

You can pay by capacity in a number of different configurations:

- Choose your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration:
 - A single node or HA system
 - File and block storage or secondary data for disaster recovery (DR)
- Add on any of NetApp's cloud data services at extra cost

Professional

Pay by capacity for any type of Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration with unlimited backups.

- Provides licensing for any Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration

Single node or HA with capacity charging for primary and secondary volumes at the same rate

- Includes unlimited volume backups using BlueXP backup and recovery, but only for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems that use the Professional package.



A pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription is required for BlueXP backup and recovery, however no charges will be incurred for using this service. For more information on setting up licensing for BlueXP backup and recovery, refer to [Set up licensing for BlueXP backup and recovery](#).

- Add on any of NetApp's cloud data services at extra cost

Availability of capacity-based licenses

The availability of the PAYGO and BYOL licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems requires the BlueXP Connector to be up and running. For more information, refer to [Learn about Connectors](#).



NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

How to get started

Learn how to get started with capacity-based licensing:

- [Set up licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Keystone Subscription

A pay-as-you-grow subscription-based service that delivers a seamless hybrid cloud experience for those preferring OpEx consumption models to upfront CapEx or leasing.

Charging is based on the size of your committed capacity for one or more Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in your Keystone Subscription.

The provisioned capacity for each volume is aggregated and compared to the committed capacity on your Keystone Subscription periodically, and any overages are charged as burst on your Keystone Subscription.

[Learn more about NetApp Keystone.](#)

Supported configurations

Keystone Subscriptions are supported with HA pairs. This licensing option isn't supported with single node systems at this time.

Capacity limit

In the capacity-based licensing model, each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system supports tiering to object storage, and the total tiered capacity can scale up to the cloud provider's bucket limit. Although the license does not impose capacity restrictions, follow the [FabricPool Best Practices](#) to ensure optimal performance, reliability, and cost efficiency when configuring and managing tiering.

For information about the capacity limits of each cloud provider, refer to their documentation:

- [AWS documentation](#)
- [Azure documentation for managed disks](#) and [Azure documentation for blob storage](#)
- [Google Cloud documentation](#)

How to get started

Learn how to get started with a Keystone Subscription:

- [Set up licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Node-based licensing

Node-based licensing is the previous generation licensing model that enabled you to license Cloud Volumes ONTAP by node. This licensing model is not available for new customers. By-node charging has been replaced with the by-capacity charging methods described above.

NetApp has planned the end of availability (EOA) and support (EOS) of node-based licensing. After the EOA and EOS, node-based licenses will need to be converted to capacity-based licenses.

For information, refer to [Customer communique: CPC-00589](#).

End of availability of node-based licenses

Beginning on 11 November, 2024, the limited availability of node-based licenses has been terminated. The support for node-based licensing ends on 31 December, 2024.

If you have a valid node-based contract that extends beyond the EOA date, you can continue to use the license until the contract expires. Once the contract expires, it will be necessary to transition to the capacity-based licensing model. If you don't have a long-term contract for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node, it is important to plan your conversion before the EOS date.

Learn more about each license type and the impact of EOA on it from this table:

License type	Impact after EOA
Valid node-based license purchased through bring your own license (BYOL)	License remains valid till expiration. Existing unused node-based licenses can be used for deploying new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.
Expired node-based license purchased through BYOL	You won't be entitled to deploy new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems using this license. The existing systems might continue to work, but you won't receive any support or updates for your systems post the EOS date.
Valid node-based license with PAYGO subscription	Will cease to receive NetApp support post the EOS date, until you transition to a capacity-based license.

Exclusions

NetApp recognizes that certain situations require special consideration, and EOA and EOS of node-based licensing will not apply to the following cases:

- U.S. Public Sector customers
- Deployments in private mode
- China region deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

For these particular scenarios, NetApp will offer support to address the unique licensing requirements in compliance with contractual obligations and operational needs.



Even in these scenarios, new node-based licenses and license renewals are valid for a maximum of one year from the date of approval.

License conversion

BlueXP enables a seamless conversion of node-based licenses to capacity based through the license conversion tool. For information about EOA of node-based licensing, refer to [End of availability of node-based licenses](#).

Before transitioning, it is good to familiarize yourself with the difference between the two licensing models. Node-based licensing includes fixed capacity for each ONTAP instance, which can restrict flexibility. Capacity-

based licensing, on the other hand, allows for a shared pool of storage across multiple instances, offering enhanced flexibility, optimizing resource utilization, and reducing the potential for financial penalties when redistributing workloads. Capacity-based charging seamlessly adjusts to changing storage requirements.

To know how you can perform this conversion, refer to [Convert a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node-based license to capacity-based license](#).



Conversion of a system from capacity-based to node-based licensing is not supported.

Learn more about capacity-based licenses for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You should be familiar with the charging and capacity usage for capacity-based licenses

Consumption models

Capacity-based licensing packages are available with the following consumption models:

- **BYOL:** Bring your own license (BYOL). A license purchased from NetApp that can be used to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in any cloud provider.



NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

- **PAYGO:** A pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) subscription is an hourly subscription from your cloud provider's marketplace.
- **Annual:** An annual contract from your cloud provider's marketplace.

Note the following:

- If you purchase a license from NetApp (BYOL), you also need to subscribe to the PAYGO offering from your cloud provider's marketplace. NetApp has restricted BYOL licensing. When your BYOL licenses expire, you are required to replace them with cloud marketplace subscriptions.

Your license is always charged first, but you'll be charged from the hourly rate in the marketplace in these cases:

- If you exceed your licensed capacity
- If the term of your license expires
- If you have an annual contract from a marketplace, *all* Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems that you deploy are charged against that contract. You can't mix and match an annual marketplace contract with BYOL.
- Only single node systems with BYOL are supported in China regions. China region deployments are exempt from BYOL licensing restrictions.

Changing packages

After deployment, you can change the package for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that uses capacity-based licensing. For example, if you deployed a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system with the Essentials package, you can change it to the Professional package if your business needs changed.

[Learn how to change charging methods](#).

For information about converting node-based licenses to capacity-based, see

Pricing and supported configurations

For details about pricing, go to the [NetApp BlueXP website](#).

Capacity-based licensing packages are available with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 and later.

Storage VMs

- There are no extra licensing costs for additional data-serving storage VMs (SVMs), but there is a 4 TiB minimum capacity charge per data-serving SVM.
- Disaster recovery SVMs are charged according to the provisioned capacity.

HA pairs

For HA pairs, you're only charged for the provisioned capacity on a node. You aren't charged for data that is synchronously mirrored to the partner node.

FlexClone and FlexCache volumes

- You won't be charged for the capacity used by FlexClone volumes.
- Source and destination FlexCache volumes are considered primary data and charged according to the provisioned space.

Capacity limit

In the capacity-based licensing model, each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system supports tiering to object storage, and the total tiered capacity can scale up to the cloud provider's bucket limit. Although the license does not impose capacity restrictions, follow the [FabricPool Best Practices](#) to ensure optimal performance, reliability, and cost efficiency when configuring and managing tiering.

For information about the capacity limits of each cloud provider, refer to their documentation:

- [AWS documentation](#)
- [Azure documentation for managed disks](#) and [Azure documentation for blob storage](#)
- [Google Cloud documentation](#)

Max number of systems

With capacity-based licensing, the maximum number of Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems is limited to 24 per BlueXP account. A *system* is a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair, a Cloud Volumes ONTAP single node system, or any additional storage VMs that you create. The default storage VM does not count against the limit. This limit applies to all licensing models.

For example, let's say you have three working environments:

- A single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system with one storage VM (this is the default storage VM that's created when you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP)

This working environment counts as one system.

- A single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system with two storage VMs (the default storage VM, plus one additional storage VM that you created)

This working environment counts as two systems: one for the single node system and one for the

additional storage VM.

- A Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair with three storage VMs (the default storage VM, plus two additional storage VMs that you created)

This working environment counts as three systems: one for the HA pair and two for the additional storage VMs.

That's six systems in total. You would then have room for an additional 14 systems in your account.

If you have a large deployment that requires more than 24 systems, contact your account rep or sales team.

[Learn more about BlueXP accounts.](#)

[Learn about storage limits for AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud.](#)

Notes about charging

The following details can help you understand how charging works with capacity-based licensing.

Minimum charge

There is a 4 TiB minimum charge for each data-serving storage VM that has at least one primary (read-write) volume. If the sum of the primary volumes is less than 4 TiB, then BlueXP applies the 4 TiB minimum charge to that storage VM.

If you haven't provisioned any volumes yet, then the minimum charge doesn't apply.

For the Essentials package, the 4 TiB minimum capacity charge doesn't apply to storage VMs that contain secondary (data protection) volumes only. For example, if you have a storage VM with 1 TiB of secondary data, then you're charged just for that 1 TiB of data. With the Professional package type, the minimum capacity charging of 4 TiB applies regardless of the volume type.

Overages

If you exceed your BYOL capacity, you'll be charged for overages at hourly rates based on your marketplace subscription. Overages are charged at marketplace rates, with a preference for using available capacity from other licenses first. If your BYOL license expires, you need to transition to a capacity-based licensing model through cloud marketplaces.

Essentials package

With the Essentials package, you're billed by the deployment type (HA or single node) and the volume type (primary or secondary). Pricing from high to low is in the following order: *Essentials Primary HA*, *Essentials Primary Single Node*, *Essentials Secondary HA*, and *Essentials Secondary Single Node*. Alternately, when you purchase a marketplace contract or accept a private offer, capacity charges are the same for any deployment or volume type.

Licensing is based entirely on the volume type created within Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems:

- Essentials Single Node: Read/write volumes created on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system using one ONTAP node only.
- Essentials HA: Read/write volumes using two ONTAP nodes that can fail over to each other for non-disruptive data access.

- Essentials Secondary Single Node: Data Protection (DP) type volumes (typically SnapMirror or SnapVault destination volumes that are read-only) created on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system using one ONTAP node only.



If a read-only/DP volume becomes a primary volume, BlueXP considers it as primary data and the charging costs are calculated based on the time the volume was in read/write mode. When the volume is again made read-only/DP, BlueXP considers it as secondary data again and charges accordingly using the best matching license in the digital wallet.

- Essentials Secondary HA: Data Protection (DP) type volumes (typically SnapMirror or SnapVault destination volumes that are read-only) created on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system using two ONTAP nodes that can fail over to each other for non-disruptive data access.

BYOL

If you purchased an Essentials license from NetApp (BYOL) and you exceed the licensed capacity for that deployment and volume type, the BlueXP digital wallet charges overages against a higher priced Essentials license (if you have one and there is available capacity). This happens because we first use the available capacity that you've already purchased as prepaid capacity before charging against the marketplace. If there is no available capacity with your BYOL license, the exceeded capacity will be charged at marketplace on-demand hourly rates (PAYGO) and will add costs to your monthly bill.

Here's an example. Let's say you have the following licenses for the Essentials package:

- A 500 TiB *Essentials Secondary HA* license that has 500 TiB of committed capacity
- A 500 TiB *Essentials Single Node* license that only has 100 TiB of committed capacity

Another 50 TiB is provisioned on an HA pair with secondary volumes. Instead of charging that 50 TiB to PAYGO, the BlueXP digital wallet charges the 50 TiB overage against the *Essentials Single Node* license. That license is priced higher than *Essentials Secondary HA*, but it's making use of a license you have already purchased, and it will not add costs to your monthly bill.

In the BlueXP digital wallet, that 50 TiB will be shown as charged against the *Essentials Single Node* license.

Here's another example. Let's say you have the following licenses for the Essentials package:

- A 500 TiB *Essentials Secondary HA* license that has 500 TiB of committed capacity
- A 500 TiB *Essentials Single Node* license that only has 100 TiB of committed capacity

Another 100 TiB is provisioned on an HA pair with primary volumes. The license you purchased doesn't have *Essentials Primary HA* committed capacity. The *Essentials Primary HA* license is priced higher than both the *Essentials Primary Single Node* and *Essentials Secondary HA* licenses.

In this example, the BlueXP digital wallet charges overages at the marketplace rate for the additional 100 TiB. The overage charges will appear on your monthly bill.

Marketplace contracts or private offers

If you purchased an Essentials license as part of a marketplace contract or a private offer, the BYOL logic does not apply, and you must have the exact license type for the usage. License type includes volume type (primary or secondary) and the deployment type (HA or single node).

For example, let's say you deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance with the Essentials license. You then provision read-write volumes (primary single node) and read-only (secondary single node) volumes. Your marketplace contract or private offer must include capacity for *Essentials Single Node* and *Essentials*

Secondary Single Node to cover the provisioned capacity. Any provisioned capacity that isn't part of your marketplace contract or private offer will be charged at the on-demand hourly rates (PAYGO) and will add costs to your monthly bill.

Storage

Supported client protocols for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the iSCSI, NFS, SMB, NVMe-TCP, and S3 client protocols.

iSCSI

iSCSI is a block protocol that can run on standard Ethernet networks. Most client operating systems offer a software initiator that runs over a standard Ethernet port.

NFS

NFS is the traditional file access protocol for UNIX and LINUX systems. Clients can access files in ONTAP volumes using the NFSv3, NFSv4, and NFSv4.1 protocols. You can control file access using UNIX-style permissions, NTFS-style permissions, or a mix of both.

Clients can access the same files using both NFS and SMB protocols.

SMB

SMB is the traditional file access protocol for Windows systems. Clients can access files in ONTAP volumes using the SMB 2.0, SMB 2.1, SMB 3.0, and SMB 3.1.1 protocols. Just like with NFS, a mix of permission styles are supported.

S3

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports S3 as an option for scale-out storage. S3 protocol support enables you to configure S3 client access to objects contained in a bucket in a storage VM (SVM).

[ONTAP documentation: Learn how S3 multiprotocol works.](#)

[ONTAP documentation: Learn how to configure and manage S3 object storage services in ONTAP.](#)

NVMe-TCP

Beginning with ONTAP version 9.12.1, NVMe-TCP is supported for cloud providers. BlueXP does not provide any management capabilities for NVMe-TCP.

For more information on configuring NVMe through ONTAP, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Configure a storage VM for NVMe](#).

Disks and aggregates used for Cloud Volumes ONTAP clusters

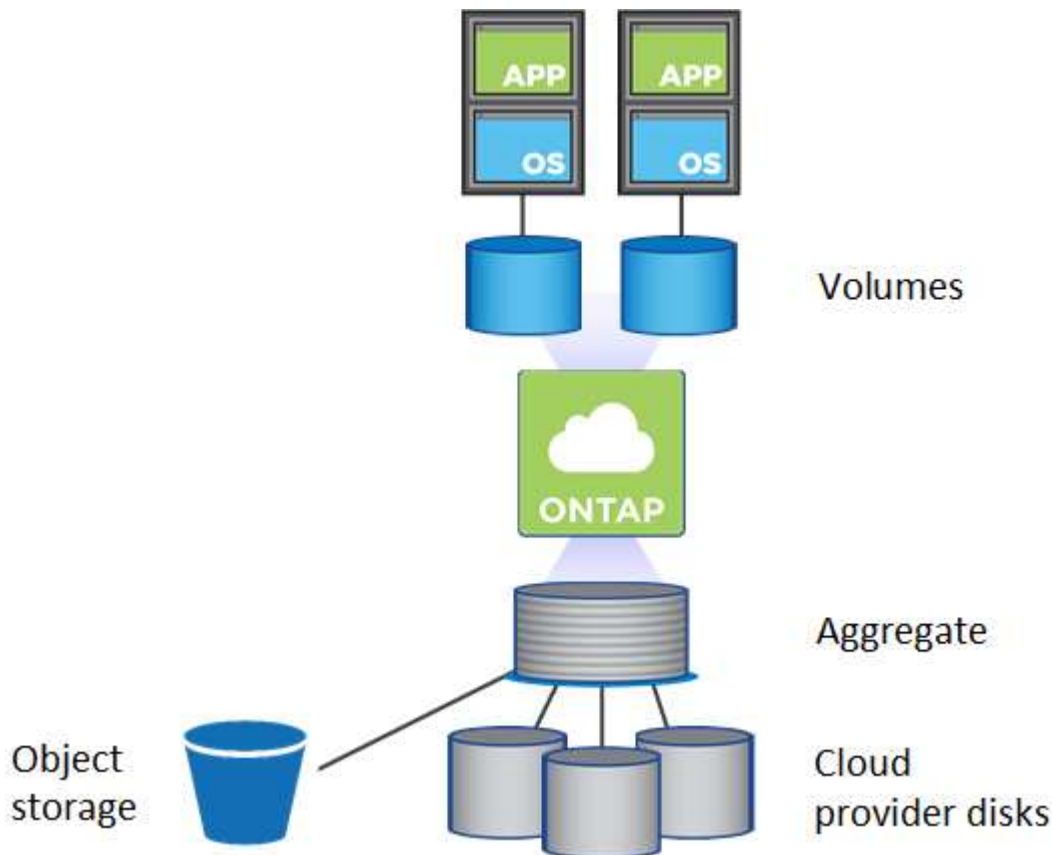
Understanding how Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses cloud storage can help you understand your storage costs.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from BlueXP. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Overview

Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses cloud provider storage as disks and groups them into one or more aggregates. Aggregates provide storage to one or more volumes.



Several types of cloud disks are supported. You choose the disk type when you create a volume and the default disk size when you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The total amount of storage purchased from a cloud provider is the *raw capacity*. The *usable capacity* is less because approximately 12 to 14 percent is overhead that is reserved for Cloud Volumes ONTAP use. For example, if BlueXP creates a 500 GiB aggregate, the usable capacity is 442.94 GiB.

AWS storage

In AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses EBS storage for user data and local NVMe storage as Flash Cache on some EC2 instance types.

EBS storage

In AWS, an aggregate can contain up to 6 disks that are all the same size. But if you have a configuration that supports the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature, then an aggregate can contain up to 8 disks. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

The maximum disk size is 16 TiB.

The underlying EBS disk type can be either General Purpose SSDs (gp3 or gp2), Provisioned IOPS SSD (io1), or Throughput Optimized HDD (st1). You can pair an EBS disk with Amazon S3 to [low-cost object storage](#).



Tiering data to object storage is not recommended when using Throughput Optimized HDDs (st1).

Local NVMe storage

Some EC2 instance types include local NVMe storage, which Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as [Flash Cache](#).

Related links

- [AWS documentation: EBS Volume Types](#)
- [Learn how to choose disk types and disk sizes for your systems in AWS](#)
- [Review storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Review supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

RAID type

The RAID type for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate is RAID0 (striping). Cloud Volumes ONTAP relies on the cloud provider for disk availability and durability. No other RAID types are supported.

Hot spares

RAID0 doesn't support the use of hot spares for redundancy.

Creating unused disks (hot spares) attached to a Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance is an unnecessary expense and may prevent provisioning additional space as needed. Therefore, it's not recommended.

Learn about support for AWS Elastic Volumes with Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Support for the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature with a Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate provides better performance and additional capacity, while enabling BlueXP to automatically increase the underlying disk capacity as needed.

Benefits

- Dynamic disk growth

BlueXP can dynamically increase the size of disks while Cloud Volumes ONTAP is running and while disks are still attached.

- Better performance

Aggregates that are enabled with Elastic Volumes can have up to eight disks that are equally utilized across two RAID groups. This configuration provides more throughput and consistent performance.

- Larger aggregates

Support for eight disks provides a maximum aggregate capacity of 128 TiB. These limits are higher than

the six disk limit and 96 TiB limit for aggregates that aren't enabled with the Elastic Volumes feature.

Note that total system capacity limits remain the same.

[AWS Documentation: Learn more about Elastic Volumes from AWS](#)

Supported configurations

The Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature is supported with specific Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions and specific EBS disk types.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP version

The Elastic Volumes feature is supported with *new* Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems created from version 9.11.0 or later. The feature is *not* supported with existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems that were deployed prior to 9.11.0.

For example, the Elastic Volumes feature is not supported if you created a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.9.0 system and then later upgraded that system to version 9.11.0. It must be a new system deployed using version 9.11.0 or later.

EBS disk types

The Elastic Volumes feature is automatically enabled at the aggregate level when using General Purpose SSDs (gp3) or Provisioned IOPS SSDs (io1). The Elastic Volumes feature is not supported with aggregates that use any other disk type.

Required AWS permissions

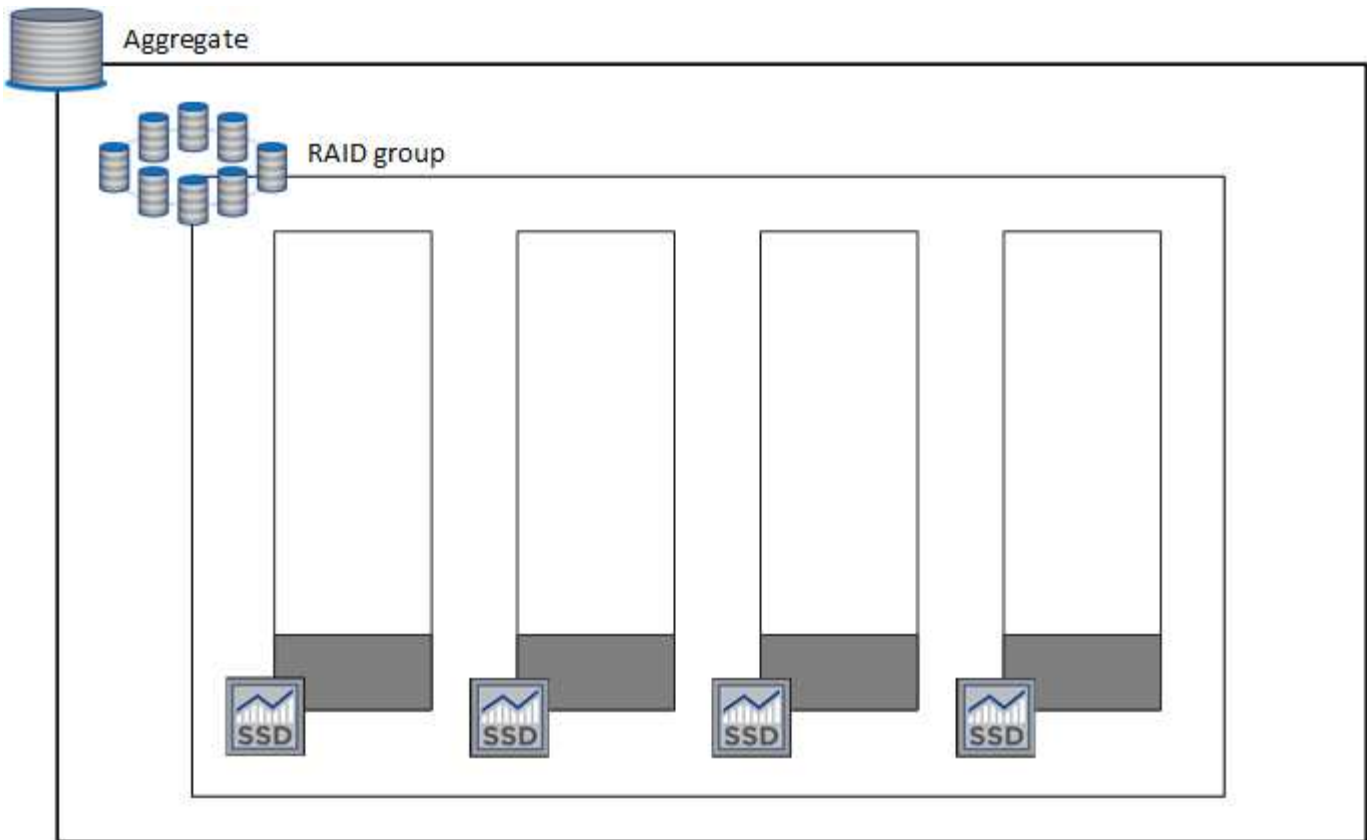
Starting with the 3.9.19 release, the Connector requires the following permissions to enable and manage the Elastic Volumes feature on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate:

- ec2:DescribeVolumesModifications
- ec2:ModifyVolume

These permissions are included in [the policies provided by NetApp](#)

How support for Elastic Volumes works

An aggregate that has the Elastic Volumes feature enabled is comprised of one or two RAID groups. Each RAID group has four identical disks that have the same capacity. Here's an example of a 10 TiB aggregate that has four disks that are 2.5 TiB each:



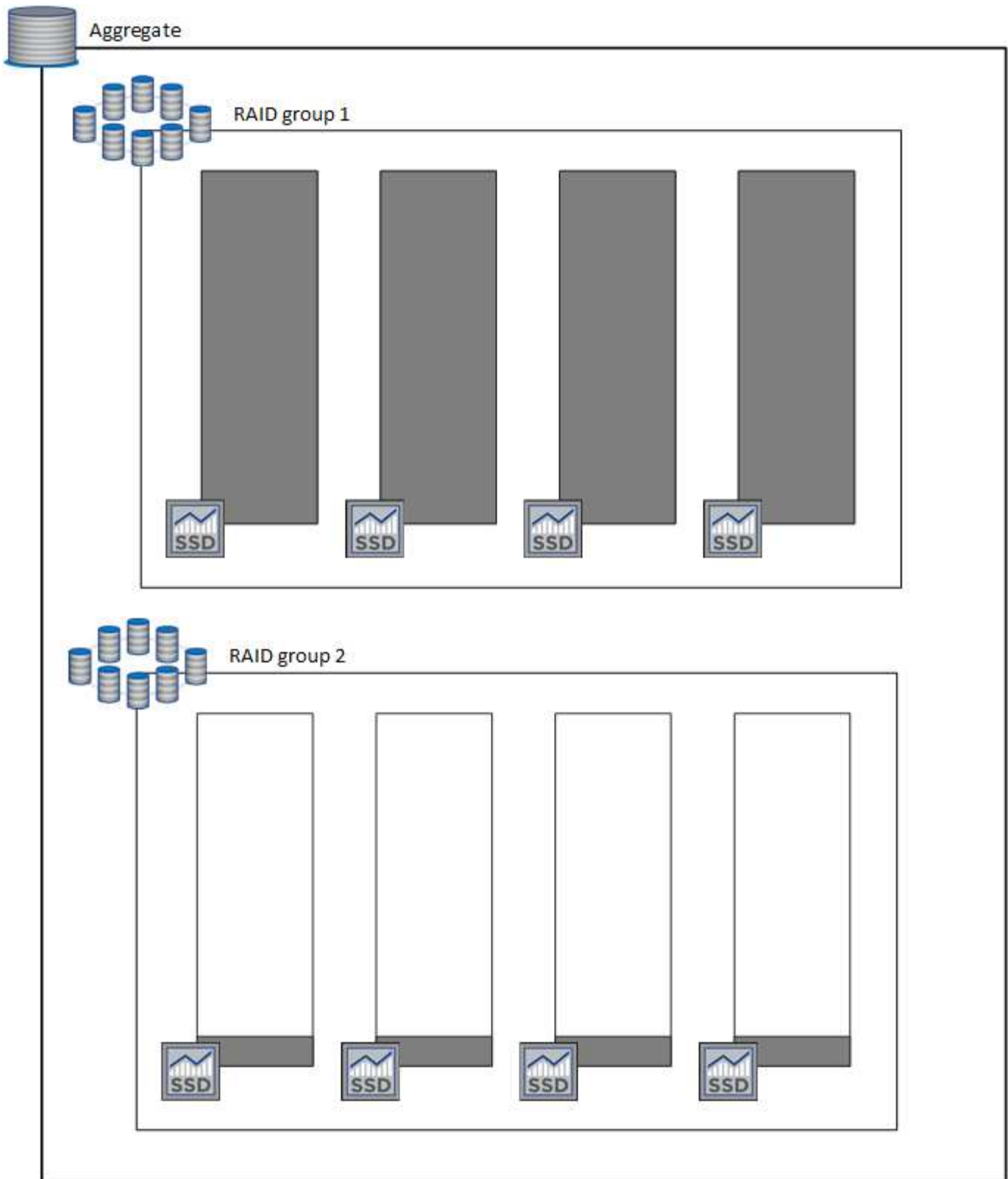
When BlueXP creates an aggregate, it starts with one RAID group. If additional capacity is needed, BlueXP grows the aggregate by increasing the capacity of all disks in the RAID group by the same amount. The capacity increase is either a minimum of 256 GiB or 10% of the aggregate's size.

For example, if you have a 1 TiB aggregate, each disk is 250 GiB. 10% of the aggregate's capacity is 100 GiB. That's lower than 256 GiB, so the size of the aggregate is increased by the 256 GiB minimum (or 64 GiB for each disk).

BlueXP increases the size of the disks while the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is running and while the disks are still attached. The change is non-disruptive.

If an aggregate reaches 64 TiB (or 16 TiB on each disk), BlueXP creates a second RAID group for additional capacity. This second RAID group works just like the first one: it has four disks that have the exact same capacity and it can grow up to 64 TiB. That means an aggregate can have a maximum capacity of 128 TiB.

Here's an example of an aggregate with two RAID groups. The capacity limit has been reached on the first RAID group, while the disks in the second RAID group have plenty of free space.



What happens when you create a volume

If you create a volume that uses gp3 or io1 disks, BlueXP creates the volume on an aggregate as follows:

- If there is an existing gp3 or io1 aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled, BlueXP creates the volume on that aggregate.

- If there are multiple gp3 or io1 aggregates that have Elastic Volumes enabled, BlueXP creates the volume on the aggregate that requires the least amount of resources.
- If the system only has gp3 or io1 aggregates that aren't enabled for Elastic Volumes, then the volume is created on that aggregate.



While this scenario is unlikely, it's possible in two cases:

- You explicitly disabled the Elastic Volumes feature when creating an aggregate from the API.
- You created a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system from the user interface, in which case the Elastic Volumes feature is disabled on the initial aggregate. Review [Limitations](#) below to learn more.

- If no existing aggregates have enough capacity, BlueXP creates the aggregate with Elastic Volumes enabled and then creates the volume on that new aggregate.

The size of the aggregate is based on the requested volume size plus an additional 10% capacity.

Capacity Management Mode

The Capacity Management Mode for a Connector works with Elastic Volumes similar to how it works with other types of aggregates:

- When Automatic mode is enabled (this is the default setting), BlueXP automatically increases the size of aggregates if additional capacity is needed.
- If you change the capacity management mode to Manual, BlueXP asks for your approval to purchase additional capacity.

[Learn more about the Capacity Management Mode.](#)

Limitations

Increasing the size of an aggregate can take up to 6 hours. During that time, BlueXP can't request any additional capacity for that aggregate.

How to work with Elastic Volumes

You can work with Elastic Volumes in BlueXP as follows:

- Create a new system that has Elastic Volumes enabled on the initial aggregate when using gp3 or io1 disks

[Learn how to create Cloud Volumes ONTAP system](#)

- Create a new volume on an aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled

If you create a volume that uses gp3 or io1 disks, BlueXP automatically creates the volume on an aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled. For more details, refer to [What happens when you create a volume.](#)

[Learn how to create volumes.](#)

- Create a new aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled

Elastic Volumes is automatically enabled on new aggregates that use gp3 or io1 disks, as long as the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system was created from version 9.11.0 or later.

When you create the aggregate, BlueXP will prompt you for the aggregate's capacity size. This is different than other configurations where you choose a disk size and number of disks.

The following screenshot shows an example of a new aggregate comprised of gp3 disks.

Select Disk Type

Disk Type

GP3 - General Purpose SSD Dynamic Performance

General Purpose SSD (gp3) Disk Properties

Description: General purpose SSD volume that balances price and performance (performance level is independent of storage capacity)


IOPS Value: 12000

Throughput MB/s: 250

[Learn how to create aggregates.](#)

- Identify aggregates that have Elastic Volumes enabled

When you go to the Advanced Allocation page, you can identify whether the Elastic Volumes feature is enabled on an aggregate. In the following example, aggr1 has Elastic Volumes enabled.


aggr1
■ ONLINE
...

INFO

Disk Type	GP3 3000 IOPS
Disks	4
Volumes	2
Elastic Volumes	Enabled
S3 Tiering	Enabled

CAPACITY

Provisioned size	907.12 GiB
EBS Used	1.13 GiB
S3 Used	0 GiB

- Add capacity to an aggregate

While BlueXP automatically adds capacity to aggregates as needed, you can manually increase the capacity yourself.

[Learn how to increase aggregate capacity.](#)

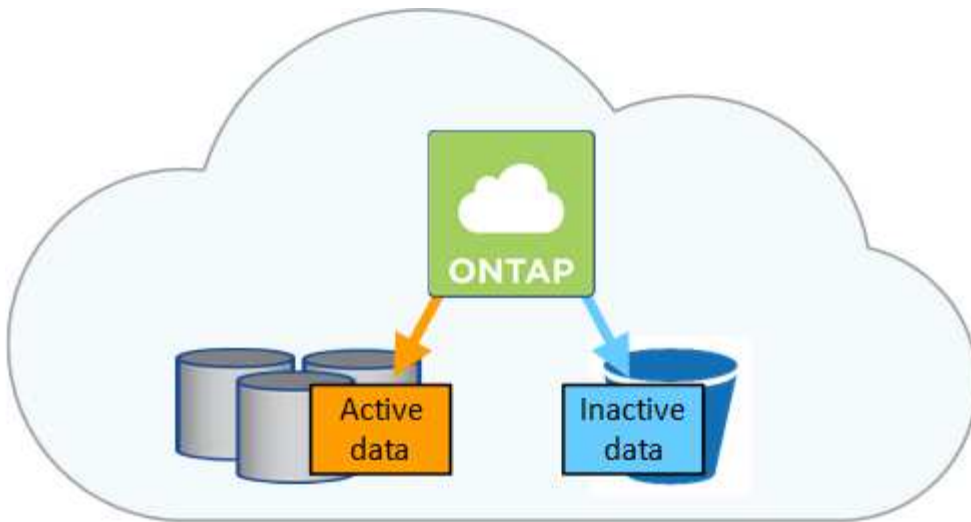
- Replicate data to an aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled

If the destination Cloud Volumes ONTAP system supports Elastic Volumes, a destination volume will be placed on an aggregate that has Elastic Volumes enabled (as long as you choose a gp3 or io1 disk).

[Learn how to set up data replication](#)

Learn about data tiering with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, Azure, or Google Cloud

Reduce your storage costs by enabling automated tiering of inactive data to low-cost object storage. Active data remains in high-performance SSDs or HDDs, while inactive data is tiered to low-cost object storage. This enables you to reclaim space on your primary storage and shrink secondary storage.



Data tiering is powered by FabricPool technology. Cloud Volumes ONTAP provides data tiering for all Cloud Volumes ONTAP clusters without an additional license. When you enable data tiering, data tiered to object storage incurs charges. Refer to your cloud provider's documentation for details about object storage costs.

Data tiering in AWS

When you enable data tiering in AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses EBS as a performance tier for hot data and AWS S3 as a capacity tier for inactive data.

Performance tier

The performance tier can be General Purpose SSDs (gp3 or gp2) or Provisioned IOPS SSDs (io1).

Tiering data to object storage is not recommended when using Throughput Optimized HDDs (st1).

Capacity tier

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP system tiers inactive data to a single S3 bucket.

BlueXP creates a single S3 bucket for each working environment and names it *fabric-pool-cluster unique identifier*. A different S3 bucket is not created for each volume.

When BlueXP creates the S3 bucket, it uses the following default settings:

- Storage class: Standard
- Default encryption: Disabled
- Block public access: Block all public access
- Object ownership: ACLs enabled
- Bucket versioning: Disabled
- Object lock: Disabled

Storage classes

The default storage class for tiered data in AWS is *Standard*. Standard is ideal for frequently accessed data stored across multiple Availability Zones.

If you don't plan to access the inactive data, you can reduce your storage costs by changing the storage class to one of the following: *Intelligent Tiering*, *One-Zone Infrequent Access*, *Standard-Infrequent Access*, or *S3 Glacier Instant Retrieval*. When you change the storage class, inactive data starts in the Standard

storage class and transitions to the storage class that you selected, if the data is not accessed after 30 days.

Access costs are higher if you access the data, so consider this before changing the storage class. [Amazon S3 documentation: Learn more about Amazon S3 storage classes](#).

You can select a storage class when you create the working environment and you can change it any time afterwards. For instructions on changing the storage class, refer to [Tier inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

The storage class for data tiering is system wide—it's not per volume.

Data tiering and capacity limits

If you enable data tiering, a system's capacity limit stays the same. The limit is spread across the performance tier and the capacity tier.

Volume tiering policies

To enable data tiering, you must select a volume tiering policy when you create, modify, or replicate a volume. You can select a different policy for each volume.

Some tiering policies have an associated minimum cooling period, which sets the time that user data in a volume must remain inactive for the data to be considered "cold" and moved to the capacity tier. The cooling period starts when data is written to the aggregate.



You can change the minimum cooling period and default aggregate threshold of 50% (more on that below). [Learn how to change the cooling period](#) and [learn how to change the threshold](#).

BlueXP enables you to choose from the following volume tiering policies when you create or modify a volume:

Snapshot Only

After an aggregate has reached 50% capacity, Cloud Volumes ONTAP tiers cold user data of Snapshot copies that are not associated with the active file system to the capacity tier. The cooling period is approximately 2 days.

If read, cold data blocks on the capacity tier become hot and are moved to the performance tier.

All

All data (not including metadata) is immediately marked as cold and tiered to object storage as soon as possible. There is no need to wait 48 hours for new blocks in a volume to become cold. Note that blocks located in the volume prior to the All policy being set require 48 hours to become cold.

If read, cold data blocks on the cloud tier stay cold and are not written back to the performance tier. This policy is available starting with ONTAP 9.6.

Auto

After an aggregate has reached 50% capacity, Cloud Volumes ONTAP tiers cold data blocks in a volume to a capacity tier. The cold data includes not just Snapshot copies but also cold user data from the active file system. The cooling period is approximately 31 days.

This policy is supported starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.4.

If read by random reads, the cold data blocks in the capacity tier become hot and move to the performance

tier. If read by sequential reads, such as those associated with index and antivirus scans, the cold data blocks stay cold and do not move to the performance tier.

None

Keeps data of a volume in the performance tier, preventing it from being moved to the capacity tier.

When you replicate a volume, you can choose whether to tier the data to object storage. If you do, BlueXP applies the **Backup** policy to the data protection volume. Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6, the **All** tiering policy replaces the backup policy.

Turning off Cloud Volumes ONTAP impacts the cooling period

Data blocks are cooled by cooling scans. During this process, blocks that haven't been used have their block temperature moved (cooled) to the next lower value. The default cooling time depends on the volume tiering policy:

- Auto: 31 days
- Snapshot Only: 2 days

Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be running for the cooling scan to work. If Cloud Volumes ONTAP is turned off, cooling will stop, as well. As a result, you can experience longer cooling times.



When Cloud Volumes ONTAP is turned off, the temperature of each block is preserved until you restart the system. For example, if the temperature of a block is 5 when you turn the system off, the temp is still 5 when you turn the system back on.

Setting up data tiering

For instructions and a list of supported configurations, refer to [Tier inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage management

BlueXP provides simplified and advanced management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from BlueXP. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Storage provisioning

BlueXP makes storage provisioning for Cloud Volumes ONTAP easy by purchasing disks and managing aggregates for you. You simply need to create volumes. You can use an advanced allocation option to provision aggregates yourself, if desired.

Simplified provisioning

Aggregates provide cloud storage to volumes. BlueXP creates aggregates for you when you launch an instance, and when you provision additional volumes.

When you create a volume, BlueXP does one of three things:

- It places the volume on an existing aggregate that has sufficient free space.
- It places the volume on an existing aggregate by purchasing more disks for that aggregate.

In the case of an aggregate in AWS that supports Elastic Volumes, BlueXP also increases the size of the disks in a RAID group. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

- It purchases disks for a new aggregate and places the volume on that aggregate.

BlueXP determines where to place a new volume by looking at several factors: an aggregate's maximum size, whether thin provisioning is enabled, and free space thresholds for aggregates.

Disk size selection for aggregates in AWS

When BlueXP creates new aggregates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, it gradually increases the disk size in an aggregate, as the number of aggregates in the system increases. BlueXP does this to ensure that you can utilize the system's maximum capacity before it reaches the maximum number of data disks allowed by AWS.

For example, BlueXP might choose the following disk sizes:

Aggregate number	Disk size	Max aggregate capacity
1	500 GiB	3 TiB
4	1 TiB	6 TiB
6	2 TiB	12 TiB



This behavior does not apply to aggregates that support the Amazon EBS Elastic Volumes feature. Aggregates that have Elastic Volumes enabled are comprised of one or two RAID groups. Each RAID group has four identical disks that have the same capacity. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

You can choose the disk size yourself by using the advanced allocation option.

Advanced allocation

Rather than let BlueXP manage aggregates for you, you can do it yourself. [From the Advanced allocation page](#), you can create new aggregates that include a specific number of disks, add disks to an existing aggregate, and create volumes in specific aggregates.

Capacity management

The BlueXP Organization or Account admin can choose whether BlueXP notifies you of storage capacity decisions or whether BlueXP automatically manages capacity requirements for you.

This behavior is determined by the *Capacity Management Mode* on a Connector. The Capacity Management Mode affects all Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems managed by that Connector. If you have another Connector, it can be configured differently.

Automatic capacity management

The Capacity Management Mode is set to automatic by default. In this mode, BlueXP checks the free space ratio every 15 minutes to determine if the free space ratio falls below the specified threshold. If more capacity is

needed, BlueXP automatically initiates purchase of new disks, deletes unused collections of disks (aggregates), moves volumes between aggregates as required, and attempts to prevent disk failure.

The following examples illustrate how this mode works:

- If an aggregate reaches the capacity threshold and it has room for more disks, BlueXP automatically purchases new disks for that aggregate so volumes can continue to grow.

In the case of an aggregate in AWS that supports Elastic Volumes, BlueXP also increases the size of the disks in a RAID group. [Learn more about support for Elastic Volumes.](#)

- If an aggregate reaches the capacity threshold and it can't support any additional disks, BlueXP automatically moves a volume from that aggregate to an aggregate with available capacity or to a new aggregate.

If BlueXP creates a new aggregate for the volume, it chooses a disk size that accommodates the size of that volume.

Note that free space is now available on the original aggregate. Existing volumes or new volumes can use that space. The space can't be returned to the cloud provider in this scenario.

- If an aggregate contains no volumes for more than 12 hours, BlueXP deletes it.

Management of LUNs with automatic capacity management

BlueXP's automatic capacity management doesn't apply to LUNs. When BlueXP creates a LUN, it disables the autogrow feature.

Manual capacity management

If the BlueXP Organization or Account admin set the Capacity Management Mode to manual, BlueXP displays Action Required messages when capacity decisions must be made. The same examples described in the automatic mode apply to the manual mode, but it is up to you to accept the actions.

Learn more

[Learn how to modify the capacity management mode.](#)

Write speed

BlueXP enables you to choose normal or high write speed for most Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations. Before you choose a write speed, you should understand the differences between the normal and high settings and risks and recommendations when using high write speed.

Normal write speed

When you choose normal write speed, data is written directly to disk. When data is written directly to disk, reduces the likelihood of data loss in the event of an unplanned system outage, or a cascading failure involving an unplanned system outage (HA pairs only).

Normal write speed is the default option.

High write speed

When you choose high write speed, data is buffered in memory before it is written to disk, which provides faster write performance. Due to this caching, there is the potential for data loss if an unplanned system outage occurs.

The amount of data that can be lost in the event of an unplanned system outage is the span of the last two consistency points. A consistency point is the act of writing buffered data to disk. A consistency point occurs when the write log is full or after 10 seconds (whichever comes first). However, the performance of the storage provided by your cloud provider can affect consistency point processing time.

When to use high write speed

High write speed is a good choice if fast write performance is required for your workload and you can withstand the risk of data loss in the event of an unplanned system outage, or a cascading failure involving an unplanned system outage (HA pairs only).

Recommendations when using high write speed

If you enable high write speed, you should ensure write protection at the application layer, or that the applications can tolerate data loss, if it occurs.

High write speed with an HA pair in AWS

If you plan to enable high write speed on an HA pair in AWS, you should understand the difference in protection levels between a multiple Availability Zone (AZ) deployment and a single AZ deployment. Deploying an HA pair across multiple AZs provides more resiliency and can help to mitigate the chance of data loss.

[Learn more about HA pairs in AWS.](#)

Configurations that support high write speed

Not all Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations support high write speed. Those configurations use normal write speed by default.

AWS

If you use a single node system, Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports high write speed with all instance types.

Starting with the 9.8 release, Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports high write speed with HA pairs when using almost all supported EC2 instance types, except for m5.xlarge and r5.xlarge.

[Learn more about the Amazon EC2 instances that Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports.](#)

How to select a write speed

You can choose a write speed when you create a new working environment and you can [change the write speed for an existing system](#).

What to expect if data loss occurs

If data loss occurs due to high write speed, the Event Management System (EMS) reports the following two events:

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 or later

```
NOTICE nv.data.loss.possible: An unexpected shutdown occurred while in
high write speed mode, which possibly caused a loss of data.
```

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.0 to 9.11.1

```
DEBUG nv.check.failed: NVRAM check failed with error "NVRAM disabled due
to dirty shutdown with High Write Speed mode"
```

```
ERROR wafl.root.content.changed: Contents of the root volume '' might
have changed. Verify that all recent configuration changes are still in
effect..
```

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 to 9.10.1

```
DEBUG nv.check.failed: NVRAM check failed with error "NVRAM disabled due
to dirty shutdown"
```

```
ERROR wafl.root.content.changed: Contents of the root volume '' might
have changed. Verify that all recent configuration changes are still in
effect.
```

When this happens, Cloud Volumes ONTAP should be able to boot up and continue to serve data without user intervention.

How to stop data access if data loss occurs

If you are concerned about data loss, want the applications to stop running upon data loss, and the data access to be resumed after the data loss issue is properly addressed, you can use the NVFAIL option from the CLI to achieve that goal.

To enable the NVFAIL option

```
vol modify -volume <vol-name> -nvfail on
```

To check NVFAIL settings

```
vol show -volume <vol-name> -fields nvfail
```

To disable the NVFAIL option

```
vol modify -volume <vol-name> -nvfail off
```

When data loss occurs, an NFS or iSCSI volume with NVFAIL enabled should stop serving data (there's no impact to CIFS which is a stateless protocol). For more details, refer to [How NVFAIL impacts access to NFS volumes or LUNs](#).

To check the NVFAIL state

```
vol show -fields in-nvfailed-state
```

After the data loss issue is properly addressed, you can clear the NVFAIL state and the volume will be available for data access.

To clear the NVFAIL state

```
vol modify -volume <vol-name> -in-nvfailed-state false
```

Flash Cache

Some Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations include local NVMe storage, which Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as *Flash Cache* for better performance.

What's Flash Cache?

Flash Cache speeds access to data through real-time intelligent caching of recently read user data and NetApp metadata. It's effective for random read-intensive workloads, including databases, email, and file services.

Supported configurations

Flash Cache is supported with specific Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations. View supported configurations in the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#)

Limitations

- When configuring Flash Cache for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.0 or earlier in AWS, compression must be disabled on all volumes to take advantage of the Flash Cache performance improvements. When you deploy or upgrade to Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 or later, you don't need to disable compression.

Choose no storage efficiency when creating a volume from BlueXP, or create a volume and then [disable data compression by using the CLI](#).

- Cache rewarming after a reboot is not supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Learn about WORM storage on Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You can activate write once, read many (WORM) storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to retain files in unmodified form for a specified retention period. Cloud WORM storage is powered by SnapLock technology, which means WORM files are protected at the file level.

The WORM feature is available for use with bring your own license (BYOL) and marketplace subscriptions for your licenses at no additional cost. Contact your NetApp sales representative to add WORM to your current license.

How WORM storage works

Once a file has been committed to WORM storage, it can't be modified, even after the retention period has expired. A tamper-proof clock determines when the retention period for a WORM file has elapsed.

After the retention period has elapsed, you are responsible for deleting any files that you no longer need.

Activating WORM storage

How you activate WORM storage depends on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version that you're using.

Version 9.10.1 and later

Beginning with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.1, you have the option to enable or disable WORM at the volume level.

When you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment, you're prompted to enable or disable WORM storage:

- If you enable WORM storage when creating a working environment, every volume that you create from BlueXP has WORM enabled. But you can use ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI to create volumes that have WORM disabled.
- If you disable WORM storage when creating a working environment, every volume that you create from BlueXP, ONTAP System Manager, or the ONTAP CLI has WORM disabled.

Version 9.10.0 and earlier

You can activate WORM storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system when you create a new working environment. Every volume that you create from BlueXP has WORM enabled. You can't disable WORM storage on individual volumes.

Committing files to WORM

You can use an application to commit files to WORM over NFS or CIFS, or use the ONTAP CLI to autocommit files to WORM automatically. You can also use a WORM appendable file to retain data that is written incrementally, like log information.

After you activate WORM storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you must use the ONTAP CLI for all management of WORM storage. For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP documentation on SnapLock](#).

Enabling WORM on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment

You can enable WORM storage when creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on BlueXP. You can also enable WORM on a working environment if WORM is not enabled on it during creation. After you enable it, you cannot disable WORM.

About this task

- WORM is supported on ONTAP 9.10.1 and later.
- WORM with backup is supported on ONTAP 9.11.1 and later.

Steps

1. On the Canvas page, double-click the name of the working environment on which you want to enable WORM.
2. On the Overview tab, click the Features panel and then click the pencil icon next to **WORM**.

If WORM is already enabled on the system, the pencil icon is disabled.

3. On the **WORM** page, set the retention period for the cluster Compliance Clock.

For more information, refer to the [ONTAP documentation: Initialize the Compliance Clock](#).

4. Click **Set**.

After you finish

You can verify the status of **WORM** on the Features panel.

After WORM is enabled, the SnapLock license is automatically installed on the cluster. You can view the SnapLock license on ONTAP System Manager.

Deleting WORM files

You can delete WORM files during the retention period using the privileged delete feature.

For instructions, refer to the [ONTAP documentation](#).

WORM and data tiering

When you create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 system or later, you can enable both data tiering and WORM storage together. Enabling data tiering with WORM storage allows you to tier the data to an object store in the cloud.

You should understand the following about enabling both data tiering and WORM storage:

- Data that is tiered to object storage doesn't include the ONTAP WORM functionality. To ensure end-to-end WORM capability, you'll need to set up the bucket permissions correctly.
- The data that is tiered to object storage doesn't carry the WORM functionality, which means technically anyone with full access to buckets and containers can go and delete the objects tiered by ONTAP.
- Reverting or downgrading to Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.8 is blocked after enabling WORM and tiering.

Limitations

- WORM storage in Cloud Volumes ONTAP operates under a "trusted storage administrator" model. While WORM files are protected from alteration or modification, volumes can be deleted by a cluster administrator even if those volumes contain unexpired WORM data.
- In addition to the trusted storage administrator model, WORM storage in Cloud Volumes ONTAP also implicitly operates under a "trusted cloud administrator" model. A cloud administrator could delete WORM data before its expiration date by removing or editing cloud storage directly from the cloud provider.

Related link

- [Create tamperproof Snapshot copies for WORM storage](#)

High-availability pairs

Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in AWS

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP high-availability (HA) configuration provides nondisruptive operations and fault tolerance. In AWS, data is synchronously mirrored between the two nodes.

HA components

In AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations include the following components:

- Two Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes whose data is synchronously mirrored between each other.
- A mediator instance that provides a communication channel between the nodes to assist in storage takeover and giveback processes.

Mediator

Here are some key details about the mediator instance in AWS:

Instance type

t3-micro

Disks

Two st1 disks of 8 GiB and 4 GiB

Operating system

Debian 11



For Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.10.0 and earlier, Debian 10 was installed on the mediator.

Upgrades

When you upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP, BlueXP also updates the mediator instance as needed.

Access to the instance

When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair from BlueXP, you're prompted to provide a key pair for the mediator instance. You can use that key pair for SSH access using the `admin` user.

Third-party agents

Third-party agents or VM extensions are not supported on the mediator instance.

Storage takeover and giveback

If a node goes down, the other node can serve data for its partner to provide continued data service. Clients can access the same data from the partner node because the data was synchronously mirrored to the partner.

After the node reboots, the partner must resync data before it can return the storage. The time that it takes to resync data depends on how much data was changed while the node was down.

Storage takeover, resync, and giveback are all automatic by default. No user action is required.

RPO and RTO

An HA configuration maintains high-availability of your data as follows:

- The recovery point objective (RPO) is 0 seconds.
Your data is transactionally consistent with no data loss.
- The recovery time objective (RTO) is 120 seconds.
In the event of an outage, data should be available in 120 seconds or less.

HA deployment models

You can ensure the high availability of your data by deploying an HA configuration across multiple availability zones (AZs) or in a single availability zone (AZ). You should review more details about each configuration to

choose which best fits your needs.

Multiple availability zones

Deploying an HA configuration in multiple availability zones (AZs) ensures high availability of your data if a failure occurs with an AZ or an instance that runs a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node. You should understand how NAS IP addresses impact data access and storage failover.

NFS and CIFS data access

When an HA configuration is spread across multiple Availability Zones, *floating IP addresses* enable NAS client access. The floating IP addresses, which must be outside of the CIDR blocks for all VPCs in the region, can migrate between nodes when failures occur. They aren't natively accessible to clients that are outside of the VPC, unless you [set up an AWS transit gateway](#).

If you can't set up a transit gateway, private IP addresses are available for NAS clients that are outside the VPC. However, these IP addresses are static—they can't failover between nodes.

You should review requirements for floating IP addresses and route tables before you deploy an HA configuration across multiple availability zones. You must specify the floating IP addresses when you deploy the configuration. The private IP addresses are automatically created by BlueXP.

For more information, refer to [AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple AZs](#).

iSCSI data access

Cross-VPC data communication is not an issue since iSCSI does not use floating IP addresses.

Takeover and giveback for iSCSI

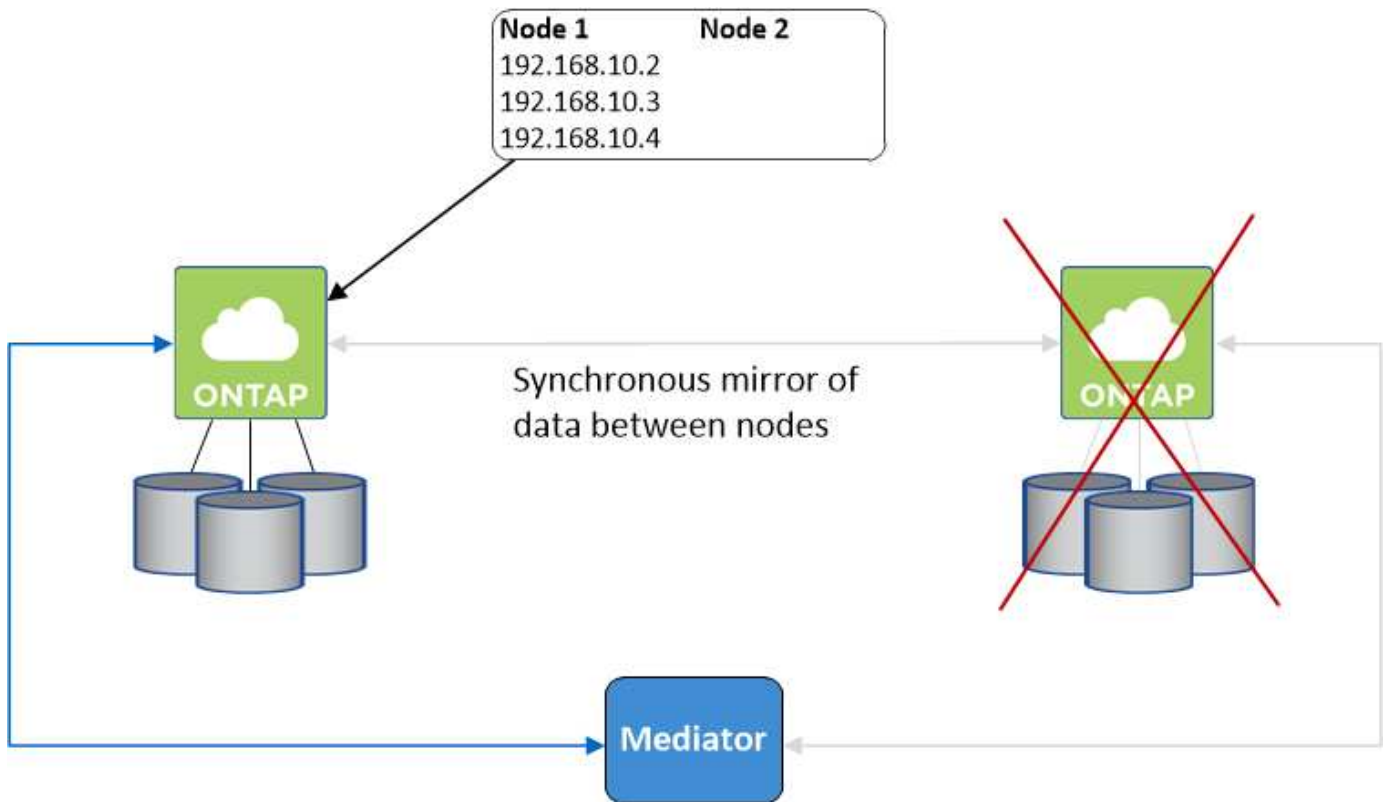
For iSCSI, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses multipath I/O (MPIO) and Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA) to manage path failover between the active-optimized and non-optimized paths.



For information about which specific host configurations support ALUA, refer to the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#) and the [SAN hosts and cloud clients guide](#) for your host operating system.

Takeover and giveback for NAS

When takeover occurs in a NAS configuration using floating IPs, the node's floating IP address that clients use to access data moves to the other node. The following image depicts storage takeover in a NAS configuration using floating IPs. If node 2 goes down, the floating IP address for node 2 moves to node 1.



NAS data IPs used for external VPC access cannot migrate between nodes if failures occur. If a node goes offline, you must manually remount volumes to clients outside the VPC by using the IP address on the other node.

After the failed node comes back online, remount clients to volumes using the original IP address. This step is needed to avoid transferring unnecessary data between two HA nodes, which can cause significant performance and stability impact.

You can easily identify the correct IP address from BlueXP by selecting the volume and clicking **Mount Command**.

Single availability zone

Deploying an HA configuration in a single availability zone (AZ) can ensure high availability of your data if an instance that runs a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node fails. All data is natively accessible from outside of the VPC.

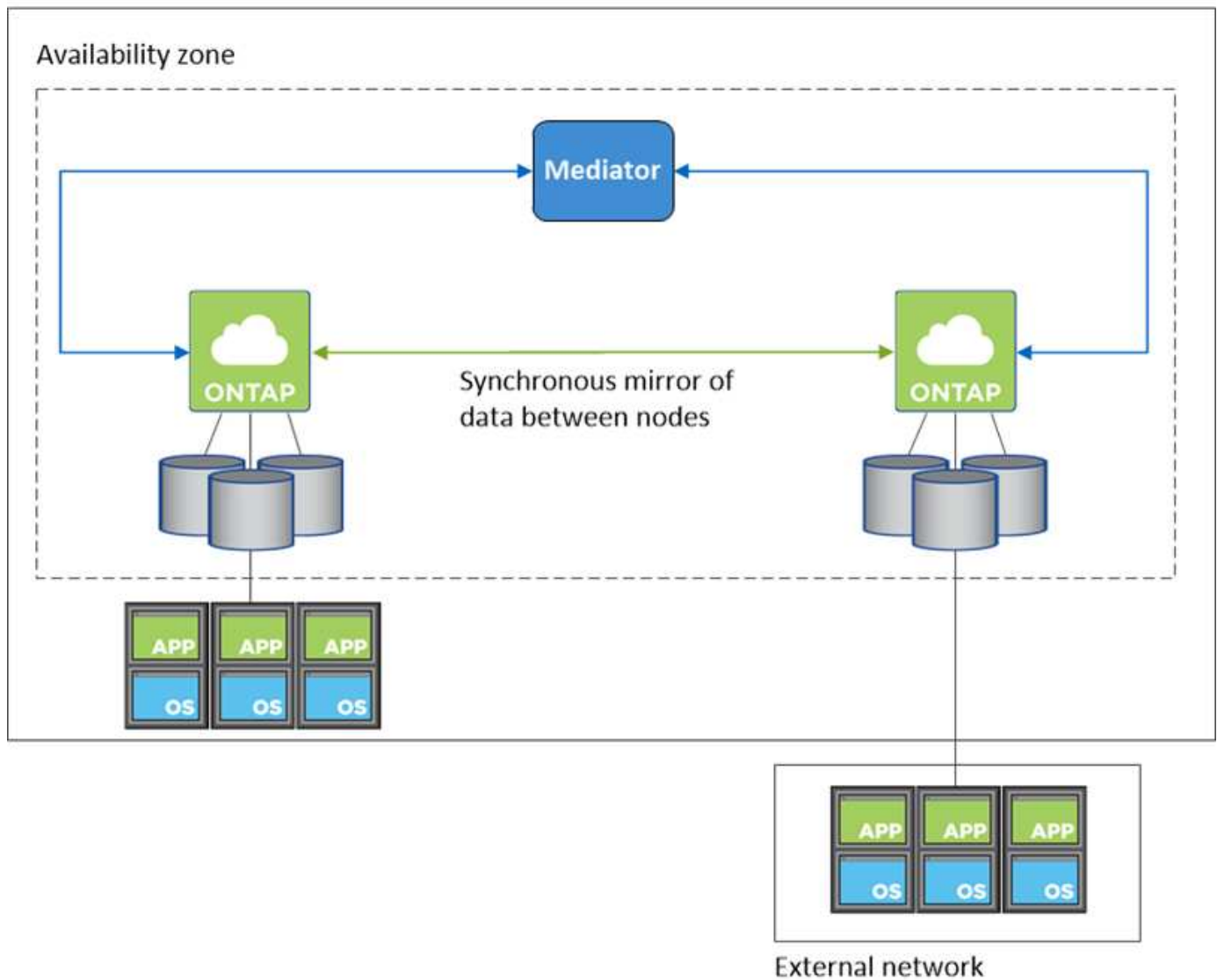


BlueXP creates an [AWS Documentation: AWS spread placement group](#) and launches the two HA nodes in that placement group. The placement group reduces the risk of simultaneous failures by spreading the instances across distinct underlying hardware. This feature improves redundancy from a compute perspective and not from disk failure perspective.

Data access

Because this configuration is in a single AZ, it does not require floating IP addresses. You can use the same IP address for data access from within the VPC and from outside the VPC.

The following image shows an HA configuration in a single AZ. Data is accessible from within the VPC and from outside the VPC.



Takeover and giveback

For iSCSI, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses multipath I/O (MPIO) and Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA) to manage path failover between the active-optimized and non-optimized paths.



For information about which specific host configurations support ALUA, refer to the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#) and the [SAN hosts and cloud clients guide](#) for your host operating system.

For NAS configurations, the data IP addresses can migrate between HA nodes if failures occur. This ensures client access to storage.

AWS Local Zones

AWS Local Zones are an infrastructure deployment where storage, compute, database, and other select AWS services are located close to large cities and industry areas. With AWS Local Zones, you can bring AWS services closer to you which improves latency for your workloads and maintain databases locally. On Cloud Volumes ONTAP,

You can deploy a single AZ or multiple AZ configuration in AWS Local Zones.



AWS Local Zones are supported when using BlueXP in standard and private modes. At this time, AWS Local Zones are not supported when using BlueXP in restricted mode.

Example AWS Local Zone configurations

Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS supports only high availability (HA) mode in a single availability zone. Single node deployments are not supported.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP does not support data tiering, cloud tiering, and unqualified instances in AWS Local Zones.

The following are example configurations:

- Single availability zone: Both cluster nodes and the mediator are in the same Local Zone.
- Multiple availability zones
In multiple availability zone configurations, there are three instances, two nodes and one mediator. One instance out of the three instances must be in a separate zone. You can choose how you set this up.

Here are three example configurations:

- Each cluster node is in a different Local Zone and the mediator in a public availability zone.
- One cluster node in a Local Zone, the mediator in a Local Zone, and the second cluster node is in an availability zone.
- Each cluster node and the mediator are in separate Local Zones.

Supported disk and instance types

The only supported disk type is GP2. The following EC2 instance type families with sizes xlarge to 4xlarge are currently supported:

- M5
- C5
- C5d
- R5
- R5d



Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports only these configurations. Selecting unsupported disk types or unqualified instances in AWS Local Zone configuration might result in deployment failure. Data tiering to AWS S3 is not available in AWS Local Zones due to lack of connectivity.

Refer to AWS documentation for the latest and complete details of the [AWS Documentation: EC2 instance types in Local Zones](#).

How storage works in an HA pair

Unlike an ONTAP cluster, storage in a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair is not shared between nodes. Instead, data is synchronously mirrored between the nodes so that the data is available in the event of failure.

Storage allocation

When you create a new volume and additional disks are required, BlueXP allocates the same number of disks to both nodes, creates a mirrored aggregate, and then creates the new volume. For example, if two disks are required for the volume, BlueXP allocates two disks per node for a total of four disks.

Storage configurations

You can use an HA pair as an active-active configuration, in which both nodes serve data to clients, or as an active-passive configuration, in which the passive node responds to data requests only if it has taken over storage for the active node.



You can set up an active-active configuration only when using BlueXP in the Storage System View.

Performance expectations

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration synchronously replicates data between nodes, which consumes network bandwidth. As a result, you can expect the following performance in comparison to a single-node Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration:

- For HA configurations that serve data from only one node, read performance is comparable to the read performance of a single-node configuration, whereas write performance is lower.
- For HA configurations that serve data from both nodes, read performance is higher than the read performance of a single-node configuration, and write performance is the same or higher.

For more details about Cloud Volumes ONTAP performance, refer to [Performance](#).

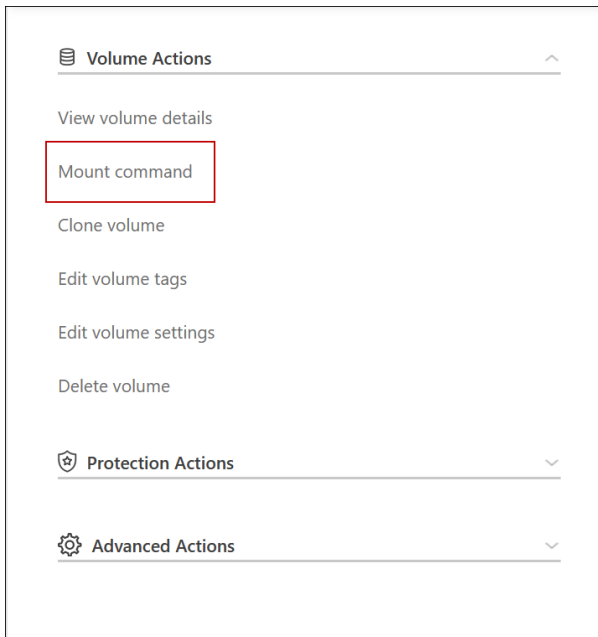
Client access to storage

Clients should access NFS and CIFS volumes by using the data IP address of the node on which the volume resides. If NAS clients access a volume by using the IP address of the partner node, traffic goes between both nodes, which reduces performance.



If you move a volume between nodes in an HA pair, you should remount the volume by using the IP address of the other node. Otherwise, you can experience reduced performance. If clients support NFSv4 referrals or folder redirection for CIFS, you can enable those features on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to avoid remounting the volume. For details, refer to the ONTAP documentation.

You can easily identify the correct IP address through the *Mount Command* option under the manage volumes panel in BlueXP.



Operations unavailable when a node in Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair is offline

When a node in an HA pair isn't available, the other node serves data for its partner to provide continued data service. This is called *storage takeover*. Several actions are unavailable until in storage giveback is complete.



When a node in an HA pair is unavailable, the state of the working environment in BlueXP is *Degraded*.

The following actions are unavailable from BlueXP storage takeover:

- Support registration
- License changes
- Instance or VM type changes
- Write speed changes
- CIFS setup
- Changing the location of configuration backups
- Setting the cluster password
- Managing disks and aggregates (advanced allocation)

These actions are available again after storage giveback completes and the state of the working environment changes back to normal.

Learn about Cloud Volumes ONTAP data encryption and ransomware protection

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports data encryption and provides protection against viruses and ransomware.

Encryption of data at rest

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the following encryption technologies:

- NetApp encryption solutions (NVE and NAE)
- AWS Key Management Service

You can use NetApp encryption solutions with native encryption from your cloud provider, which encrypts data at the hypervisor level. Doing so would provide double encryption, which might be desired for very sensitive data. When the encrypted data is accessed, it's unencrypted twice—once at the hypervisor-level (using keys from the cloud provider) and then again using NetApp encryption solutions (using keys from an external key manager).

NetApp encryption solutions (NVE and NAE)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports [NetApp Volume Encryption \(NVE\)](#) and [NetApp Aggregate Encryption \(NAE\)](#). NVE and NAE are software-based solutions that enable (FIPS) 140-2-compliant data-at-rest encryption of volumes. Both NVE and NAE use AES 256-bit encryption.

- NVE encrypts data at rest one volume at a time. Each data volume has its own unique encryption key.
- NAE is an extension of NVE—it encrypts data for each volume, and the volumes share a key across the aggregate. NAE also allows common blocks across all volumes in the aggregate to be deduplicated.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports both NVE and NAE with external key management services (EKMs) provided by AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud, including third-party solutions, such as Fortanix. Unlike ONTAP, for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, encryption keys are generated at the cloud provider's side, not in ONTAP.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses the standard Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) services that ONTAP uses. For more information about the supported services, refer to the [Interoperability Matrix Tool](#).

If you use NVE, you have the option to use your cloud provider's key vault to protect ONTAP encryption keys:

- AWS Key Management Service (KMS)

New aggregates have NetApp Aggregate Encryption (NAE) enabled by default after you set up an external key manager. New volumes that aren't part of an NAE aggregate have NVE enabled by default (for example, if you have existing aggregates that were created before setting up an external key manager).

Setting up a supported key manager is the only required step. For set up instructions, refer to [Encrypt volumes with NetApp encryption solutions](#).

AWS Key Management Service

When you launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS, you can enable data encryption using the [AWS Key Management Service \(KMS\)](#). BlueXP requests data keys using a customer master key (CMK).



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

If you want to use this encryption option, then you must ensure that the AWS KMS is set up appropriately. For information, refer to [Setting up the AWS KMS](#).

ONTAP virus scanning

You can use integrated antivirus functionality on ONTAP systems to protect data from being compromised by viruses or other malicious code.

ONTAP virus scanning, called *Vscan*, combines best-in-class third-party antivirus software with ONTAP features that give you the flexibility you need to control which files get scanned and when.

For information about the vendors, software, and versions supported by Vscan, refer to the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix](#).

For information about how to configure and manage the antivirus functionality on ONTAP systems, refer to the [ONTAP 9 Antivirus Configuration Guide](#).

Ransomware protection

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. BlueXP enables you to implement the NetApp solution for ransomware, which provides effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation.

- BlueXP identifies volumes that are not protected by a Snapshot policy and enables you to activate the default Snapshot policy on those volumes.


Snapshot copies are read-only, which prevents ransomware corruption. They can also provide the granularity to create images of a single file copy or a complete disaster recovery solution.

- BlueXP also enables you to block common ransomware file extensions by enabling ONTAP's FPolicy solution.

Ransomware Protection

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. The NetApp solution for ransomware provides effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation. [Learn More](#)

1 Enable Snapshot Copy Protection ⓘ




50 %
Protection

1 Volumes without a Snapshot Policy

To protect your data, activate the default Snapshot policy for these volumes ⓘ

Activate Snapshot Policy

2 Block Ransomware File Extensions ⓘ



ONTAP's native FPolicy configuration monitors and blocks file operations based on a file's extension.

View Denied File Names ⓘ

Activate FPolicy

[Learn how to implement the NetApp solution for ransomware.](#)

Learn about performance monitoring for Cloud Volumes ONTAP workloads

You can review performance results to help you decide which workloads are appropriate for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Performance technical reports

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS

[NetApp Technical Report 4383: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Amazon Web Services with Application Workloads](#)

CPU performance

Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes show as highly utilized (over 90%) from your cloud provider's monitoring tools. This is because ONTAP reserves all vCPUs presented to the virtual machine so that they are available when needed.

For information, refer to the [NetApp knowledgebase article about how to monitor ONTAP CPU utilization using the CLI](#)

License management for node-based BYOL

Each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that has a node-based bring your own license (BYOL) must have a system license installed with an active subscription. BlueXP simplifies the process by managing licenses for you and by displaying a warning before they expire.



A node-based license is the previous generation license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. A node-based license could be procured from NetApp (BYOL) and is available for license renewals, only in specific cases.

[Learn more about Cloud Volumes ONTAP licensing options.](#)

[Learn more about how to manage node-based licenses.](#)

BYOL system licenses

Node-based licenses could be procured from NetApp. The number of licenses that you can purchase for a single node system or HA pair is unlimited.



NetApp has restricted the purchase, extension, and renewal of BYOL licensing. For more information, refer to [Restricted availability of BYOL licensing for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

A node-based license provides up to 368 TiB of capacity for a single node or HA pair. You might have purchased multiple licenses for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL system to allocate more than 368 TiB of capacity. For example, you might have two licenses to allocate up to 736 TiB of capacity to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Or you could have four licenses to get up to 1.4 PiB.

Be aware that disk limits can prevent you from reaching the capacity limit by using disks alone. You can go beyond the disk limit by [tiering inactive data to object storage](#). For information about disk limits, refer to [storage limits in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#).

License management for a new system

When you create a node-based BYOL system, BlueXP prompts you for the serial number of your license and

your NetApp Support Site account. BlueXP uses the account to download the license file from NetApp and to install it on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts to BlueXP.](#)

If BlueXP can't access the license file over the secure internet connection, you can [obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to BlueXP](#).

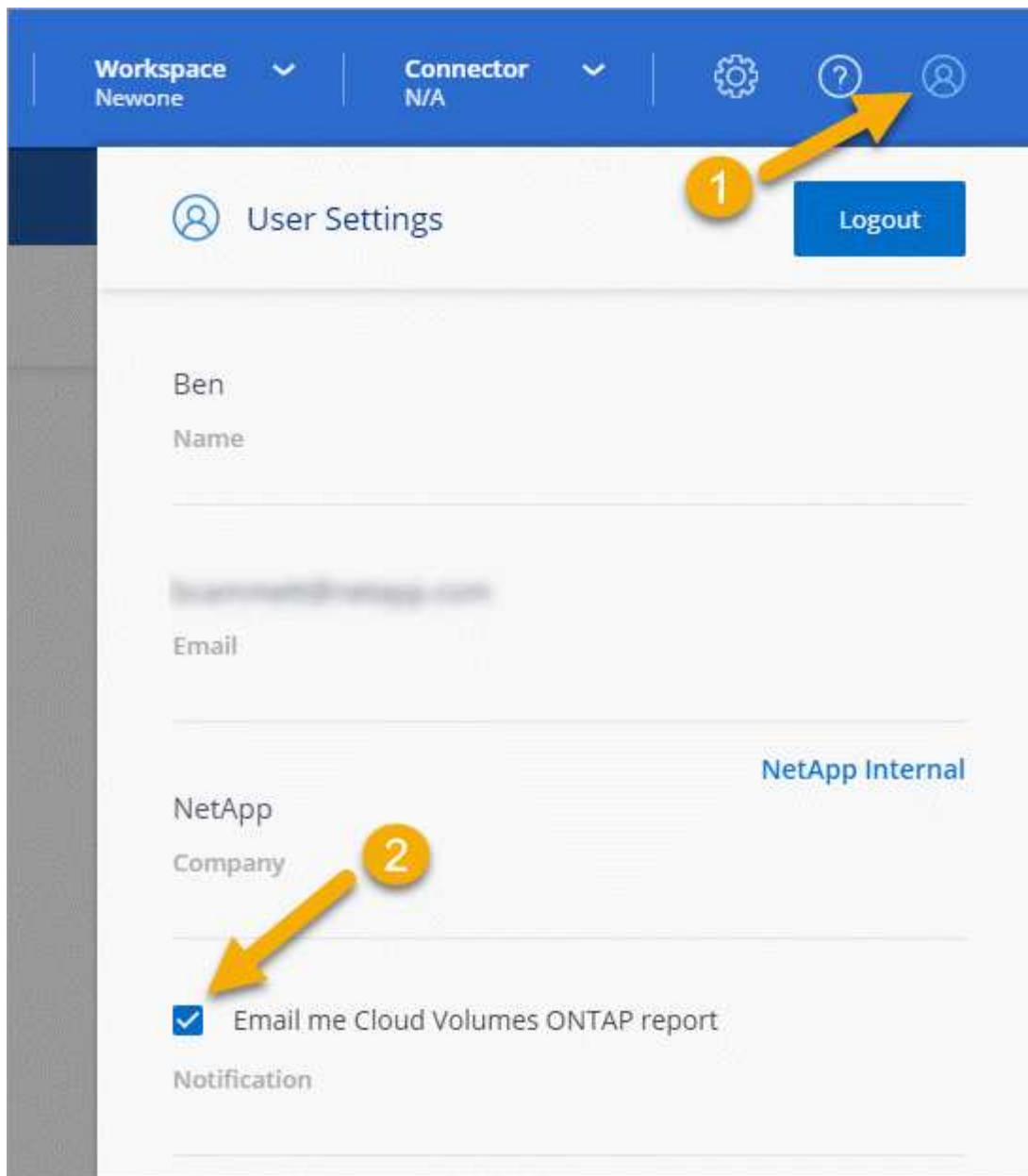
License expiration

BlueXP displays a warning 30 days before a node-based license is due to expire and again when the license expires. The following image shows a 30-day expiration warning that appears in the user interface:



You can select the working environment to review the message.

BlueXP includes a license expiration warning in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP report that's emailed to you, if you are a BlueXP Organization or Account admin and you enabled the option:



The emailed report includes the license expiration warning every 2 weeks.

If you don't renew the license in time, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system shuts itself down. If you restart it, it shuts itself down again.

License renewal

If you renew a node-based BYOL subscription by contacting a NetApp representative, BlueXP automatically obtains the new license from NetApp and installs it on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

If BlueXP can't access the license file over the secure internet connection, you can [obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to BlueXP](#).

License transfer to a new system

A node-based BYOL license is transferable between Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems when you delete an existing system and then create a new one using the same license.

For example, you might want to delete an existing licensed system and then use the license with a new BYOL system in a different VPC/VNet or cloud provider. Note that only *cloud-agnostic* serial numbers work in any cloud provider. Cloud-agnostic serial numbers start with the *908xxxx* prefix.

It's important to note that your BYOL license is tied to your company and a specific set of NetApp Support Site credentials.

Learn how AutoSupport and Digital Advisor are used for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The AutoSupport component of ONTAP collects telemetry and sends it for analysis. Active IQ Digital Advisor (also known as Digital Advisor) analyzes the data from AutoSupport and provides proactive care and optimization. Using artificial intelligence, Digital Advisor can identify potential problems and help you resolve them before they impact your business.

Digital Advisor enables you to optimize your data infrastructure across your global hybrid cloud by delivering actionable predictive analytics and proactive support through a cloud-based portal and mobile app. Data-driven insights and recommendations from Digital Advisor are available to all NetApp customers with an active SupportEdge contract (features vary by product and support tier).

Here are some things you can do with Digital Advisor:

- Plan upgrades.

Digital Advisor identifies issues in your environment that can be resolved by upgrading to a newer version of ONTAP and the Upgrade Advisor component helps you plan for a successful upgrade.

- View system wellness.

Your Digital Advisor dashboard reports any issues with wellness and helps you correct those issues. Monitor system capacity to make sure you never run out of storage space. View support cases for your system.

- Manage performance.

Digital Advisor shows system performance over a longer period than you can see in ONTAP System Manager. Identify configuration and system issues that are impacting your performance. Maximize efficiency. View storage efficiency metrics and identify ways to store more data in less space.

- View inventory and configuration.

Digital Advisor displays complete inventory and software and hardware configuration information. See when service contracts are expiring and renew them to ensure you remain supported.

Related links

- [NetApp Documentation: Digital Advisor](#)
- [Launch Digital Advisor](#)
- [SupportEdge Services](#)

Supported default configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Understanding how Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured by default can help you set up and administer your systems, especially if you are familiar with ONTAP because the default setup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP is different than ONTAP.

Default setup

- BlueXP creates one data-serving storage VM when it deploys Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Some configurations support additional storage VMs. [Learn more about managing storage VMs.](#)

Starting with the BlueXP 3.9.5 release, logical space reporting is enabled on the initial storage VM. When space is reported logically, ONTAP reports the volume space such that all the physical space saved by the storage efficiency features are also reported as used. For information about inline storage efficiency features, refer to the knowledge base article [KB: What Inline Storage Efficiency features are supported with CVO?](#)

- BlueXP automatically installs the following ONTAP feature licenses on Cloud Volumes ONTAP:
 - CIFS
 - FlexCache
 - FlexClone
 - iSCSI
 - Multi-tenant Encryption Key Management (MTEKM), starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.12.1 GA
 - NetApp Volume Encryption (only for bring your own license (BYOL) or registered pay-as-you-go (PAYGO) systems)
 - NFS
 - ONTAP S3

Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.11.0 in AWS

- SnapMirror
 - SnapRestore
 - SnapVault
- Several network interfaces are created by default:
 - A cluster management LIF
 - An intercluster LIF
 - An SVM management LIF on single node systems in AWS
 - A node management LIF
 - An iSCSI data LIF
 - A CIFS and NFS data LIF



LIF failover is disabled by default for Cloud Volumes ONTAP due to cloud provider requirements. Migrating a LIF to a different port breaks the external mapping between IP addresses and network interfaces on the instance, making the LIF inaccessible.


- Cloud Volumes ONTAP sends configuration backups to the Connector using HTTP.

The backups are accessible from `http://ipaddress/occm/offboxconfig/` where *ipaddress* is the IP address of the Connector host.

You can use the backups for reconfiguring your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. For more information about configuration backups, refer to the [ONTAP documentation](#).

- BlueXP sets a few volume attributes differently than other management tools (ONTAP System Manager or the ONTAP CLI, for example).

The following table lists the volume attributes that BlueXP sets differently from the defaults:

Attribute	Value set by BlueXP
Autosize mode	grow
Maximum autosize	1,000 percent <div>  <div>The BlueXP Organization or Account admin can modify this value from the Settings page.</div> </div>
Security style	NTFS for CIFS volumes UNIX for NFS volumes
Space guarantee style	none
UNIX permissions (NFS only)	777

For information about these attributes, refer to [ONTAP volume create man page](#).

Internal disks for system data

In addition to the storage for user data, BlueXP also purchases cloud storage for system data.

AWS

- Three disks per node for boot, root, and core data:
 - 47 GiB io1 disk for boot data
 - 140 GiB gp3 disk for root data
 - 540 GiB gp2 disk for core data
- For HA pairs:
 - Two st1 EBS volumes for the mediator instance, one of approximately 8 GiB as root disk, and one of 4 GiB as data disk
 - One 140 GiB gp3 disk in each node to contain a copy of the root data of the other node



In some zones, the available EBS disk type can only be gp2.

- One EBS snapshot for each boot disk and root disk



Snapshots are created automatically upon reboot.

- When you enable data encryption in AWS using the Key Management Service (KMS), the boot and root disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP are encrypted, as well. This includes the boot disk for the mediator instance in an HA pair. The disks are encrypted using the CMK that you select when you create the working environment.



In AWS, NVRAM is on the boot disk.

Where the disks reside

BlueXP lays out the storage as follows:

- Boot data resides on a disk attached to the instance or virtual machine.

This disk, which contains the boot image, is not available to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- Root data, which contains the system configuration and logs, resides in aggr0.
- The storage virtual machine (SVM) root volume resides in aggr1.
- Data volumes also reside in aggr1.

Knowledge and support

Register for support

Support registration is required to receive technical support specific to BlueXP and its storage solutions and services. Support registration is also required to enable key workflows for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Registering for support does not enable NetApp support for a cloud provider file service. For technical support related to a cloud provider file service, its infrastructure, or any solution using the service, refer to "Getting help" in the BlueXP documentation for that product.

- [Amazon FSx for ONTAP](#)
- [Azure NetApp Files](#)
- [Google Cloud NetApp Volumes](#)

Support registration overview

There are two forms of registration to activate support entitlement:

- Registering your BlueXP account serial number (your 20 digit 960xxxxxxx serial number located on the Support Resources page in BlueXP).

This serves as your single support subscription ID for any service within BlueXP. Each BlueXP account-level support subscription must be registered.

- Registering the Cloud Volumes ONTAP serial numbers associated with a subscription in your cloud provider's marketplace (these are 20 digit 909201xxxxxxx serial numbers).

These serial numbers are commonly referred to as *PAYGO serial numbers* and get generated by BlueXP at the time of Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployment.

Registering both types of serial numbers enables capabilities like opening support tickets and automatic case generation. Registration is completed by adding NetApp Support Site (NSS) accounts to BlueXP as described below.

Register BlueXP for NetApp support

To register for support and activate support entitlement, one user in your BlueXP organization (or account) must associate a NetApp Support Site account with their BlueXP login. How you register for NetApp support depends on whether you already have a NetApp Support Site (NSS) account.

Existing customer with an NSS account

If you're a NetApp customer with an NSS account, you simply need to register for support through BlueXP.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the BlueXP console, select the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.
2. Select **User Credentials**.

3. Select **Add NSS credentials** and follow the NetApp Support Site (NSS) Authentication prompt.
4. To confirm that the registration process was successful, select the Help icon, and select **Support**.

The **Resources** page should show that your BlueXP organization is registered for support.

Note that other BlueXP users will not see this same support registration status if they have not associated a NetApp Support Site account with their BlueXP login. However, that doesn't mean that your BlueXP organization is not registered for support. As long as one user in the organization has followed these steps, then your organization has been registered.

Existing customer but no NSS account

If you're an existing NetApp customer with existing licenses and serial numbers but *no* NSS account, you need to create an NSS account and associate it with your BlueXP login.

Steps

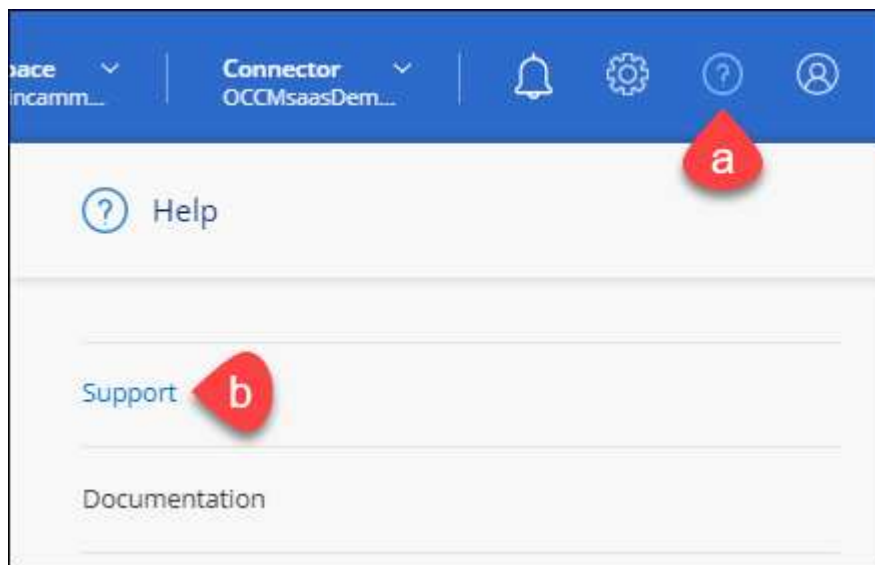
1. Create a NetApp Support Site account by completing the [NetApp Support Site User Registration form](#)
 - a. Be sure to select the appropriate User Level, which is typically **NetApp Customer/End User**.
 - b. Be sure to copy the BlueXP account serial number (960xxxx) used above for the serial number field. This will speed up the account processing.
2. Associate your new NSS account with your BlueXP login by completing the steps under [Existing customer with an NSS account](#).

Brand new to NetApp

If you are brand new to NetApp and you don't have an NSS account, follow each step below.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the BlueXP console, select the Help icon, and select **Support**.



2. Locate your account ID serial number from the Support Registration page.



96015585434285107893
Account serial number

⚠ Not Registered

Add your NetApp Support Site (NSS) [credentials](#) to BlueXP
Follow these [instructions](#) to register for support in case you don't have an NSS account yet.

3. Navigate to [NetApp's support registration site](#) and select **I am not a registered NetApp Customer**.
4. Fill out the mandatory fields (those with red asterisks).
5. In the **Product Line** field, select **Cloud Manager** and then select your applicable billing provider.
6. Copy your account serial number from step 2 above, complete the security check, and then confirm that you read NetApp's Global Data Privacy Policy.

An email is immediately sent to the mailbox provided to finalize this secure transaction. Be sure to check your spam folders if the validation email doesn't arrive in few minutes.

7. Confirm the action from within the email.

Confirming submits your request to NetApp and recommends that you create a NetApp Support Site account.

8. Create a NetApp Support Site account by completing the [NetApp Support Site User Registration form](#)
 - a. Be sure to select the appropriate User Level, which is typically **NetApp Customer/End User**.
 - b. Be sure to copy the account serial number (960xxxx) used above for the serial number field. This will speed up processing.

After you finish

NetApp should reach out to you during this process. This is a one-time onboarding exercise for new users.

Once you have your NetApp Support Site account, associate the account with your BlueXP login by completing the steps under [Existing customer with an NSS account](#).

Associate NSS credentials for Cloud Volumes ONTAP support

Associating NetApp Support Site credentials with your BlueXP organization is required to enable the following key workflows for Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- Registering pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems for support

Providing your NSS account is required to activate support for your system and to gain access to NetApp technical support resources.

- Deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP when you bring your own license (BYOL)

Providing your NSS account is required so that BlueXP can upload your license key and to enable the subscription for the term that you purchased. This includes automatic updates for term renewals.

- Upgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP software to the latest release

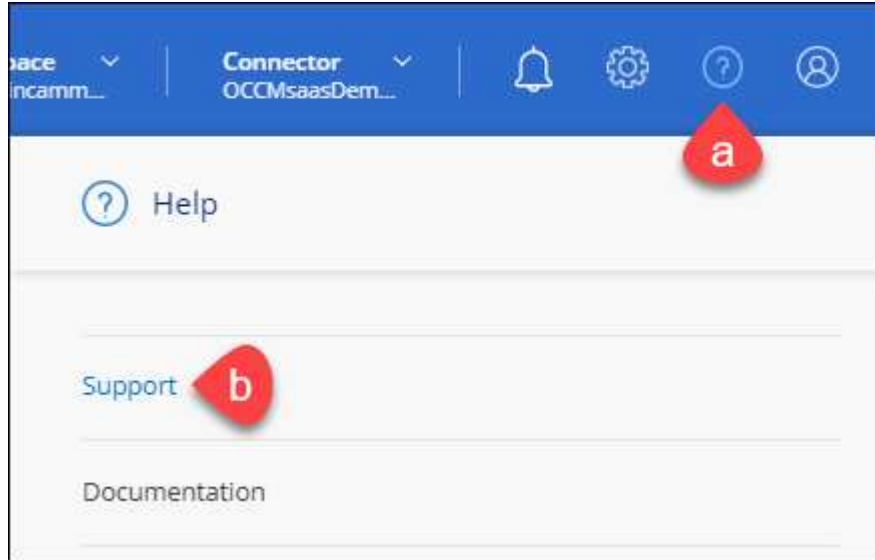
Associating NSS credentials with your BlueXP organization is different than the NSS account that is associated with a BlueXP user login.

These NSS credentials are associated with your specific BlueXP organization ID. Users who belong to the BlueXP organization can access these credentials from **Support > NSS Management**.

- If you have a customer-level account, you can add one or more NSS accounts.
- If you have a partner or reseller account, you can add one or more NSS accounts, but they can't be added alongside customer-level accounts.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the BlueXP console, select the Help icon, and select **Support**.



2. Select **NSS Management > Add NSS Account**.
3. When you're prompted, select **Continue** to be redirected to a Microsoft login page.

NetApp uses Microsoft Entra ID as the identity provider for authentication services specific to support and licensing.

4. At the login page, provide your NetApp Support Site registered email address and password to perform the authentication process.

These actions enable BlueXP to use your NSS account for things like license downloads, software upgrade verification, and future support registrations.


Note the following:


- The NSS account must be a customer-level account (not a guest or temp account). You can have multiple customer-level NSS accounts.
- There can be only one NSS account if that account is a partner-level account. If you try to add customer-level NSS accounts and a partner-level account exists, you'll get the following error message:

"The NSS customer type is not allowed for this account as there are already NSS Users of different type."

The same is true if you have pre-existing customer-level NSS accounts and try to add a partner-level account.

- Upon successful login, NetApp will store the NSS user name.

This is a system-generated ID that maps to your email. On the **NSS Management** page, you can display your email from the  menu.

- If you ever need to refresh your login credential tokens, there is also an **Update Credentials** option in the  menu.

Using this option prompts you to log in again. Note that the token for these accounts expire after 90 days. A notification will be posted to alert you of this.

Get help

NetApp provides support for BlueXP and its cloud services in a variety of ways. Extensive free self-support options are available 24/7, such as knowledgebase (KB) articles and a community forum. Your support registration includes remote technical support via web ticketing.

Get support for a cloud provider file service

For technical support related to a cloud provider file service, its infrastructure, or any solution using the service, refer to "Getting help" in the BlueXP documentation for that product.

- [Amazon FSx for ONTAP](#)
- [Azure NetApp Files](#)
- [Google Cloud NetApp Volumes](#)

To receive technical support specific to BlueXP and its storage solutions and services, use the support options described below.

Use self-support options

These options are available for free, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week:

- Documentation

The BlueXP documentation that you're currently viewing.

- [Knowledge base](#)

Search through the BlueXP knowledge base to find helpful articles to troubleshoot issues.

- [Communities](#)

Join the BlueXP community to follow ongoing discussions or create new ones.

Create a case with NetApp support

In addition to the self-support options above, you can work with a NetApp Support specialist to resolve any issues after you activate support.

Before you get started

- To use the **Create a Case** capability, you must first associate your NetApp Support Site credentials with your BlueXP login. [Learn how to manage credentials associated with your BlueXP login.](#)
- If you're opening a case for an ONTAP system that has a serial number, then your NSS account must be

associated with the serial number for that system.

Steps

1. In BlueXP, select **Help > Support**.
2. On the **Resources** page, choose one of the available options under Technical Support:
 - a. Select **Call Us** if you'd like to speak with someone on the phone. You'll be directed to a page on netapp.com that lists the phone numbers that you can call.
 - b. Select **Create a Case** to open a ticket with a NetApp Support specialist:
 - **Service:** Select the service that the issue is associated with. For example, BlueXP when specific to a technical support issue with workflows or functionality within the service.
 - **Working Environment:** If applicable to storage, select **Cloud Volumes ONTAP** or **On-Prem** and then the associated working environment.


The list of working environments are within scope of the BlueXP organization (or account), project (or workspace), and Connector you have selected in the top banner of the service.

- **Case Priority:** Choose the priority for the case, which can be Low, Medium, High, or Critical.

To learn more details about these priorities, hover your mouse over the information icon next to the field name.

- **Issue Description:** Provide a detailed description of your problem, including any applicable error messages or troubleshooting steps that you performed.
- **Additional Email Addresses:** Enter additional email addresses if you'd like to make someone else aware of this issue.
- **Attachment (Optional):** Upload up to five attachments, one at a time.

Attachments are limited to 25 MB per file. The following file extensions are supported: txt, log, pdf, jpg/jpeg, rtf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, and csv.

ntapitdemo 


NetApp Support Site Account

Service

Select ▼

Working Enviroment


Select ▼

Case Priority 

Low - General guidance ▼

Issue Description



Provide detailed description of problem, applicable error messages and troubleshooting steps taken.



Additional Email Addresses (Optional) 

Type here

Attachment (Optional)

No files selected

 Upload 

After you finish

A pop-up will appear with your support case number. A NetApp Support specialist will review your case and get back to you soon.

For a history of your support cases, you can select **Settings > Timeline** and look for actions named "create support case." A button to the far right lets you expand the action to see details.

It's possible that you might encounter the following error message when trying to create a case:

"You are not authorized to Create a Case against the selected service"

This error could mean that the NSS account and the company of record it's associated with is not the same company of record for the BlueXP account serial number (ie. 960xxxx) or the working environment serial number. You can seek assistance using one of the following options:

- Use the in-product chat
- Submit a non-technical case at <https://mysupport.netapp.com/site/help>

Manage your support cases (Preview)

You can view and manage active and resolved support cases directly from BlueXP. You can manage the cases associated with your NSS account and with your company.

Case management is available as a Preview. We plan to refine this experience and add enhancements in upcoming releases. Please send us feedback by using the in-product chat.

Note the following:

- The case management dashboard at the top of the page offers two views:
 - The view on the left shows the total cases opened in the past 3 months by the user NSS account you provided.
 - The view on the right shows the total cases opened in the past 3 months at your company level based on your user NSS account.

The results in the table reflect the cases related to the view that you selected.

- You can add or remove columns of interest and you can filter the contents of columns like Priority and Status. Other columns provide just sorting capabilities.

View the steps below for more details.

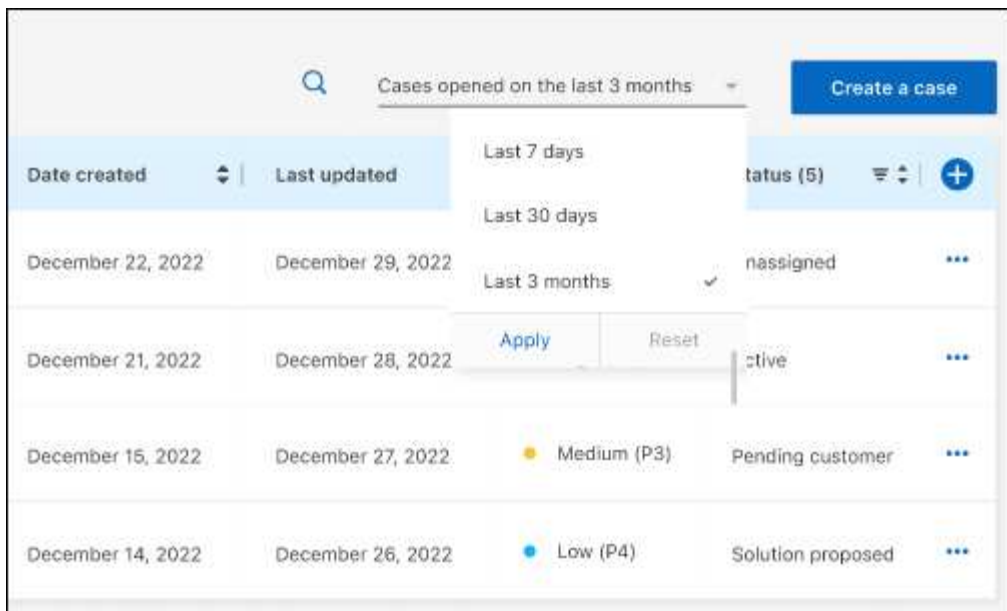
- At a per-case level, we offer the ability to update case notes or close a case that is not already in Closed or Pending Closed status.

Steps

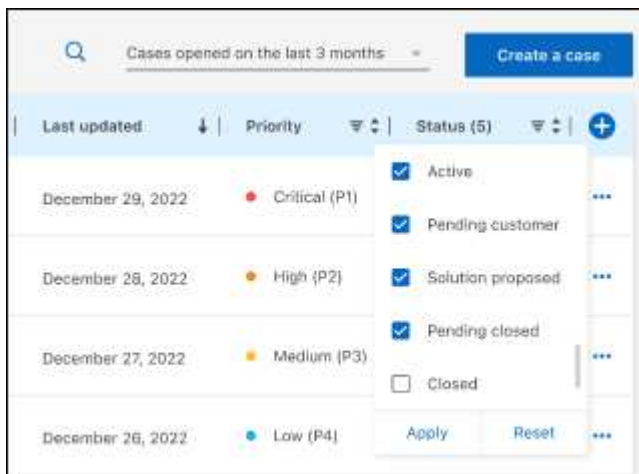
1. In BlueXP, select **Help > Support**.
2. Select **Case Management** and if you're prompted, add your NSS account to BlueXP.

The **Case management** page shows open cases related to the NSS account that is associated with your BlueXP user account. This is the same NSS account that appears at the top of the **NSS management** page.

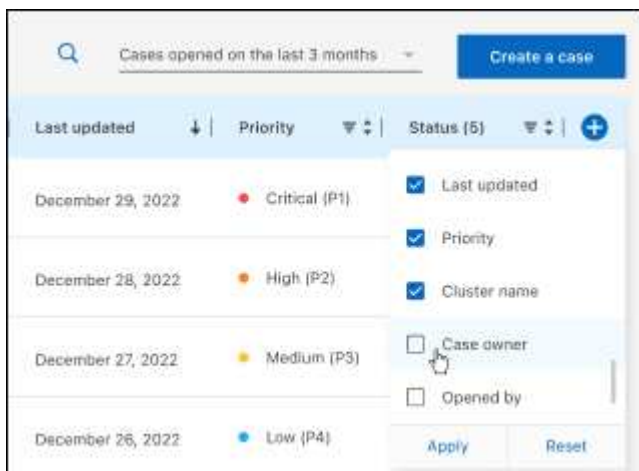
3. Optionally modify the information that displays in the table:
 - Under **Organization's cases**, select **View** to view all cases associated with your company.
 - Modify the date range by choosing an exact date range or by choosing a different time frame.



- Filter the contents of the columns.



- Change the columns that appear in the table by selecting  and then choosing the columns that you'd like to display.

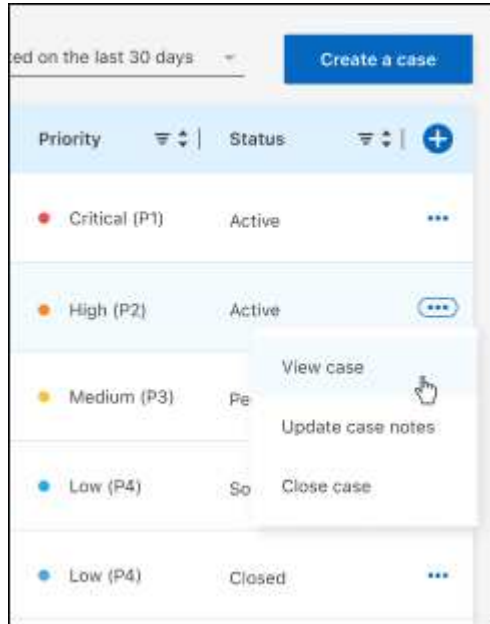


4. Manage an existing case by selecting ... and selecting one of the available options:

- **View case:** View full details about a specific case.
- **Update case notes:** Provide additional details about your problem or select **Upload files** to attach up to a maximum of five files.

Attachments are limited to 25 MB per file. The following file extensions are supported: txt, log, pdf, jpg/jpeg, rtf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, and csv.

- **Close case:** Provide details about why you're closing the case and select **Close case**.



Legal notices

Legal notices provide access to copyright statements, trademarks, patents, and more.

Copyright

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/copyright/>

Trademarks

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed on the NetApp Trademarks page are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/trademarks/>

Patents

A current list of NetApp owned patents can be found at:

<https://www.netapp.com/pdf.html?item=/media/11887-patentspage.pdf>

Privacy policy

<https://www.netapp.com/company/legal/privacy-policy/>

Open source

Notice files provide information about third-party copyright and licenses used in NetApp software.

- [Notice for BlueXP](#)
- [Notice for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)
- [Notice for ONTAP](#)

Copyright information

Copyright © 2025 NetApp, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Printed in the U.S. No part of this document covered by copyright may be reproduced in any form or by any means—graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or storage in an electronic retrieval system—without prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Software derived from copyrighted NetApp material is subject to the following license and disclaimer:

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NETAPP “AS IS” AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NETAPP BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

NetApp reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. NetApp assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by NetApp. The use or purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of NetApp.

The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

LIMITED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (b)(3) of the Rights in Technical Data -Noncommercial Items at DFARS 252.227-7013 (FEB 2014) and FAR 52.227-19 (DEC 2007).

Data contained herein pertains to a commercial product and/or commercial service (as defined in FAR 2.101) and is proprietary to NetApp, Inc. All NetApp technical data and computer software provided under this Agreement is commercial in nature and developed solely at private expense. The U.S. Government has a non-exclusive, non-transferrable, nonsublicensable, worldwide, limited irrevocable license to use the Data only in connection with and in support of the U.S. Government contract under which the Data was delivered. Except as provided herein, the Data may not be used, disclosed, reproduced, modified, performed, or displayed without the prior written approval of NetApp, Inc. United States Government license rights for the Department of Defense are limited to those rights identified in DFARS clause 252.227-7015(b) (FEB 2014).

Trademark information

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed at <http://www.netapp.com/TM> are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.